

G DATA Business Solutions

Reference Guide

Contents

Introduction	6
Section A: Planning and deployment	7
1. Network and client management	7
1.1. Network layout	7
1.2. Security components.....	12
2. Choosing a solution	13
2.1. G DATA business solutions	13
2.2. System requirements	14
2.3. Licensing	15
3. Installation scenarios	16
3.1. Local deployment	16
3.2. Managed Endpoint Security and Managed Endpoint Security Powered by Microsoft Azure	22
4. Deployment.....	23
4.1. Preparation	23
4.2. Clean installation.....	24
4.3. Upgrade installation	27
4.4. Network configuration	29
4.5. Initial configuration	30
4.6. Server updates and registration.....	32
4.7. Server database backup and restore	33
4.8. Client deployment	35
4.9. Finalizing deployment.....	43
4.10. Subnet server(s).....	44
5. Remote administration.....	46
5.1. Desktop application.....	46
5.2. Browser	47
5.3. Mobile.....	49
5.4. MasterAdmin.....	50

Section B: Using G DATA business solutions	51
6. Dashboard and monitoring.....	51
6.1. Overview, Dashboard and Statistics	51
6.2. Reports and Alarms	54
6.3. ReportManager	56
7. Managing clients	58
7.1. Using groups	58
7.2. Integrating Active Directory	59
7.3. Signature and program file updates	60
7.4. End user security permissions.....	64
7.5. Performance	65
7.6. Malware Information Initiative.....	66
7.7. Managing Linux/Mac clients	66
7.8. Removing a client	67
8. Real time protection.....	68
8.1. Internet traffic scans.....	69
8.2. Monitor	71
8.3. Performance	74
8.4. Operating system security.....	75
8.5. Web proxy protection	77
9. On demand protection.....	78
9.1. Idle scan	78
9.2. Scan jobs	79
9.3. Exceptions.....	85
9.4. Local scan jobs.....	86
10. Handling a malware infection	87
10.1. Automated detection and mitigation	87
10.2. Extended mitigation	89
10.3. Analysis	90
11. Mobile device management.....	93
11.1. Android.....	93
11.2. iOS	98

12. Backups	102
12.1. Managing backups	103
12.2. Create a backup	104
12.3. Restore a backup	109
13. Firewall.....	111
13.1. Managing firewall clients.....	112
13.2. Autopilot	113
13.3. Rule sets	113
13.4. End user permissions.....	115
13.5. Logs	116
14. PolicyManager	119
14.1. Applications	119
14.2. Devices	121
14.3. Web content.....	123
14.4. Internet usage time.....	125
15. PatchManager	127
15.1. Step 1: Inventory update	128
15.2. Step 2: Information gathering	129
15.3. Step 3: Strategy and planning	130
15.4. Step 4: Testing.....	130
15.5. Step 5: Schedule and assessment.....	132
15.6. Step 6: Patch deployment	132
15.7. Step 7: Verification and reporting	132
16. Network monitoring.....	133
16.1. Using network monitoring	133
16.2. Preparation and deployment.....	134
16.3. Configuration.....	135
16.4. Infrastructure analysis.....	136
17. Mail server security	138
17.1. Exchange Mail Security.....	138
17.2. Linux Mail Security Gateway.....	141
17.3. MailGateway.....	142

18. Advanced configuration	161
18.1. GdmmsConfig.exe.....	161
18.2. Database requirements	162
18.3. Config.xml	163
18.4. G DATA Exchange Mail Security.....	167
18.5. Client-based tools.....	169
18.6. Logging.....	171
18.7. Uninstallation	173
 Acronyms	 175
Index.....	176

Introduction

G DATA provides high-end malware protection for SMB and enterprise networks. The solutions are based on central configuration and administration and provide as much automation as possible, while allowing extensive customization. All clients, whether workstations, notebooks, file servers, or mobile clients, are administered centrally. Client processes run invisibly in the background and automatic internet updates enable extremely fast response times. G DATA supports various administration approaches, whether security functions need to be configured to function autonomously, or full control over the software's actions needs to be maintained. This document will support informed decision making about the deployment of G DATA business solutions and will provide recommendations and optimal settings to protect SMB and enterprise networks.

The process of providing network and client security can be divided in three parts. Ideally, security is kept in mind right from the start, before deploying any hardware or software. However, even existing networks can and should profit from a well-wrought security policy. The planning stage helps administrators think about the needs and wishes of the end user, the physical possibilities of hardware, the optimal layout of the enterprise network, and the layers of security that will be added to all nodes. With a high-level network layout in mind, an informed decision can be made about the G DATA security solution that will be deployed.

With the basics arranged, administrators can move on to the actual deployment of their G DATA business solution of choice. Whether it is an SMB network with fewer than 50 clients, or an enterprise deployment with over 1000 clients, the installation of G DATA software can be streamlined and adapted to each situation. To enable swift client deployment, G DATA solutions support several client installation scenarios, ranging from automated remote installations using Active Directory to local client deployment.

After deploying server(s) and clients, the final phase is initiated. Using the newly built client-server infrastructure, administrators can configure client protection, as well as mail server security, backups, patch management, security policies, and much more. This document will assist in effectively configuring G DATA software for optimal security without sacrificing performance.

Section A: Planning and deployment

1. Network and client management

Setting up and managing a secure business network can be challenging. Network and client hardware and software need to be configured to support various end user workflows while keeping out unauthorized users, attackers and other threats. Rather than immediately deploying G DATA software to all existing servers and clients in the network, network layout and client management should be considered first. By organizing the network into different zones and defining client roles, subsequent configuration can be made significantly easier. By dividing the network and using standardized client profiles, time is saved when deploying new security updates, planning scans or scheduling backups. Additionally, critical parts of the network can be defined as such, allowing for focus on the most important infrastructure when necessary.

1.1. Network layout

The network layout concerns the physical arrangement of all network hardware, such as modems, routers, switches, servers, clients and other networked devices. Rather than adding networked devices as they are acquired and deployed, working with a standardized network layout allows network administrators to maintain an overview of the network as a whole. By working with network zones and client roles, a standardized configuration can be deployed to every new device as soon as it is added, saving time and ensuring compliance across the whole network. This concept applies to smaller networks as well as bigger ones. As soon as more than one client is used in a business context, having a default configuration prevents frustration when troubleshooting client issues, security problems or network irregularities.

Building a network can be planned by creating a network diagram. The diagram should list all network devices, including routers, switches and other supporting equipment. It provides an overview of the various physical security layers, including modems, routers, and firewalls. Before deploying any software security solution, these devices, serving as the network's first line of defense, should be configured. For example, when using a modem or router with built-in firewall, make sure that the firewall is enabled and that appropriate rule sets have been defined to drop malicious traffic. Other built-in security functions should be assessed and if appropriate, enabled. Note that all of these settings are to be considered only a baseline of network security: enabling a firewall alone does not protect network clients. Once a security solution has been deployed to client devices, previously configured measures on hardware devices may have to be tested to ensure compatibility.

In addition to visualizing the various hardware security layers, a network diagram is a very productive way to group clients together. This is where the concepts of network zones and client roles come in. In its most basic form, a network zone is a specific segment of the network which has been assigned for a specific purpose. Network zones allow security measures to be configured per IP range, giving administrators immediate insight in the required policies for a new device deployment within a specific zone. Grouping by network zone means grouping devices by parameters such as physical location, purpose, security restrictions or any other properties. For example, devices can be grouped into a network zone based on their physical location in the building ("Sales department", "Front office"). When

dividing devices based on security restrictions, a network zone could include internet-facing servers (DMZ), restricted-access local clients, or any other device group that should be configured using common policies. Especially the deployment of a DMZ is recommended for organizations that host their own internet-facing servers (such as hosting a website, a mail server or an FTP server). Configuring these machines as a separate network zone, with strict firewall rules separating them from the internal network, hugely reduces the risk of an attacker successfully infiltrating devices in the internal network. Each network zone can be seen as its own trust zone with its own security restrictions. Traffic flow to and from each network zone can be restricted on a network level to make sure that critical infrastructure cannot be accessed without authorization. Even for existing networks, defining at least a few different trust zones can help get an insight which machines are most essential to the company and should be protected accordingly.

Every network client can be assigned a specific client role, corresponding to its use, its priority, its security risk or other parameters. For existing networks that have their clients organized in Active Directory (AD), a client role roughly corresponds to an AD Organizational Unit. A client that will be used mostly for basic office tasks could be assigned the role “Office”. For priority-based roles, a generically deployed client for office activity could be assigned a lower priority client role than the meticulously configured developer’s client. The client role defines its local security policies as well as its software deployment. There can be some overlap between the client role and its network zone, for example if network zones have been configured based on physical proximity. Ideally, there will be as much overlap as possible, so that administrators can configure one policy per zone that covers all its clients. For example, the proximity-based network zone “Sales department” would ideally only contain devices in the “Sales” client role, which would allow administrators to deploy the same software configuration and security policies to all clients in that network zone. However, not all clients within one network zone might be used for the same purposes. When using a network zone that is based on security permissions, the clients will share a large part of their security settings, but can still have different software deployments and thus different client roles. The following diagrams will clarify the concepts of network zones and client roles in several common network deployments.

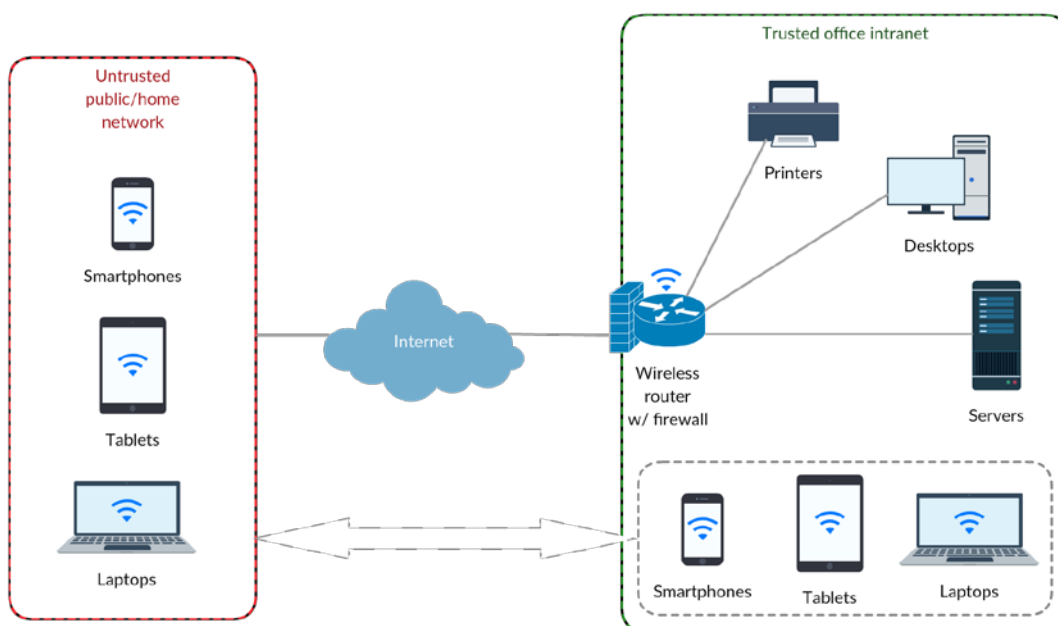


Image 1: Small office network

In the small office network scenario, most security measures need to be implemented on the clients. Other than the optional hardware firewall, no network-level security is present. There is no clear distinction in network zones, but client roles should still be enforced, even though there may only be one or two machines per role. Centrally defining security policies for specific client roles, using AD Group Policy Objects and G DATA ManagementServer, will provide tailored security to each client in the network. Specifically, it should be ensured that the server has appropriate fallback measures. If the server itself fails, due to hardware problems or connectivity issues, the clients should still be able to connect to network resources. In addition, server configuration and databases should be backed up to a second, separate device, or to an external storage medium.

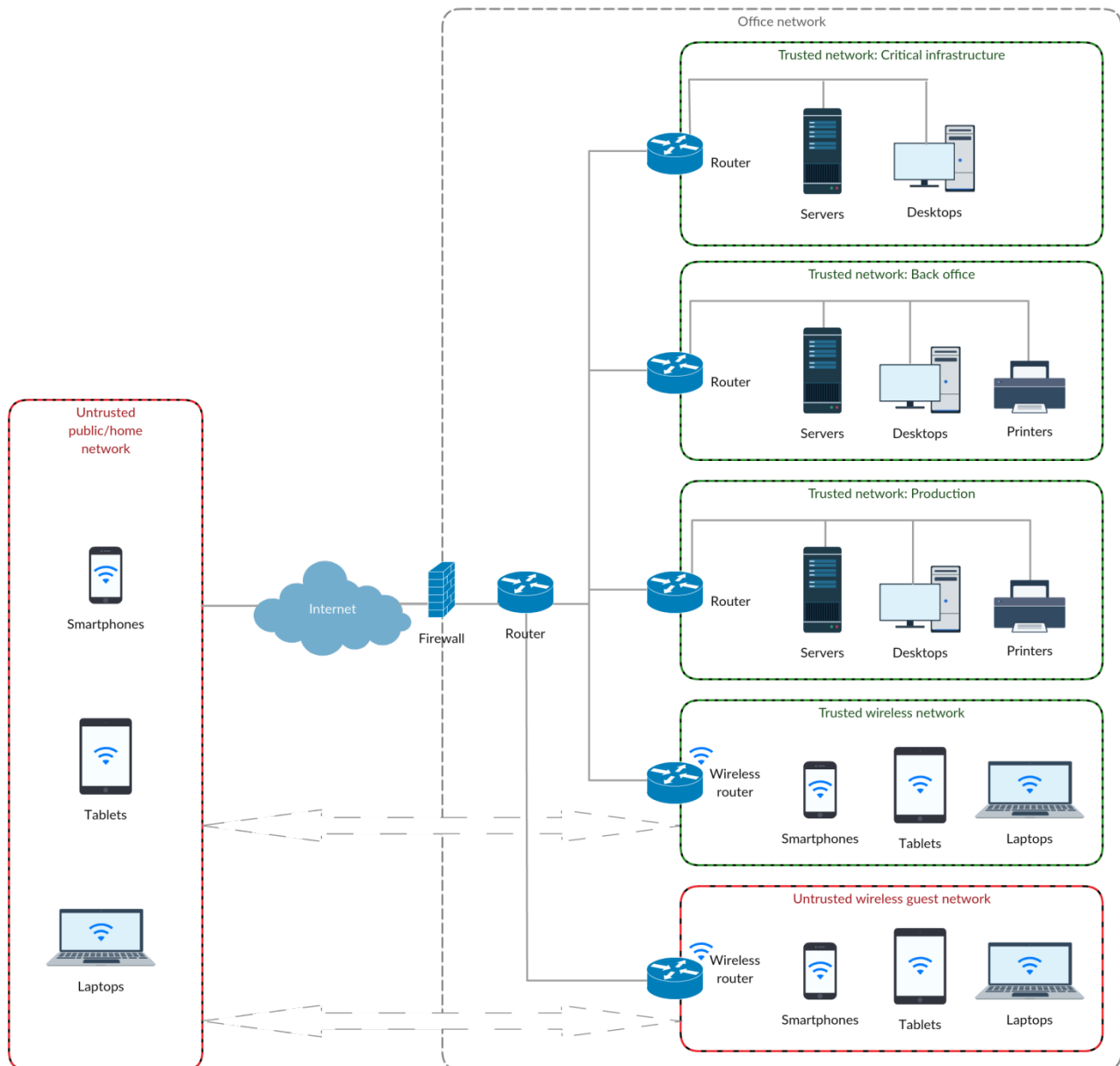


Image 2: Medium to large office network

As the number of network clients grows, a simple network will inhibit effective deployment and maintenance. A formalized network layout with its network zones and client roles will allow administrators to develop policies for the different types of clients that are served. This type of network

scales easily, allowing clients numbers from ten to several hundreds. A typical medium to large office network does not rely on a single device unifying modem, router and firewall. Instead, several gateway devices are deployed to serve protected internet access. A separate network-level firewall device allows for high-performance filtering of network traffic. After the firewall, traffic is distributed to the internal network. The different network zones are physically separated by assigning them one network device each and dividing them into different subnets. Routers and switches provide access for cabled connections to the various network zones and manage and restrict traffic between different trust zones. If they have been deployed and set up for the corporate network, mobile devices can connect to a trusted wireless devices network. For unknown devices, a separate untrusted guest network is configured.

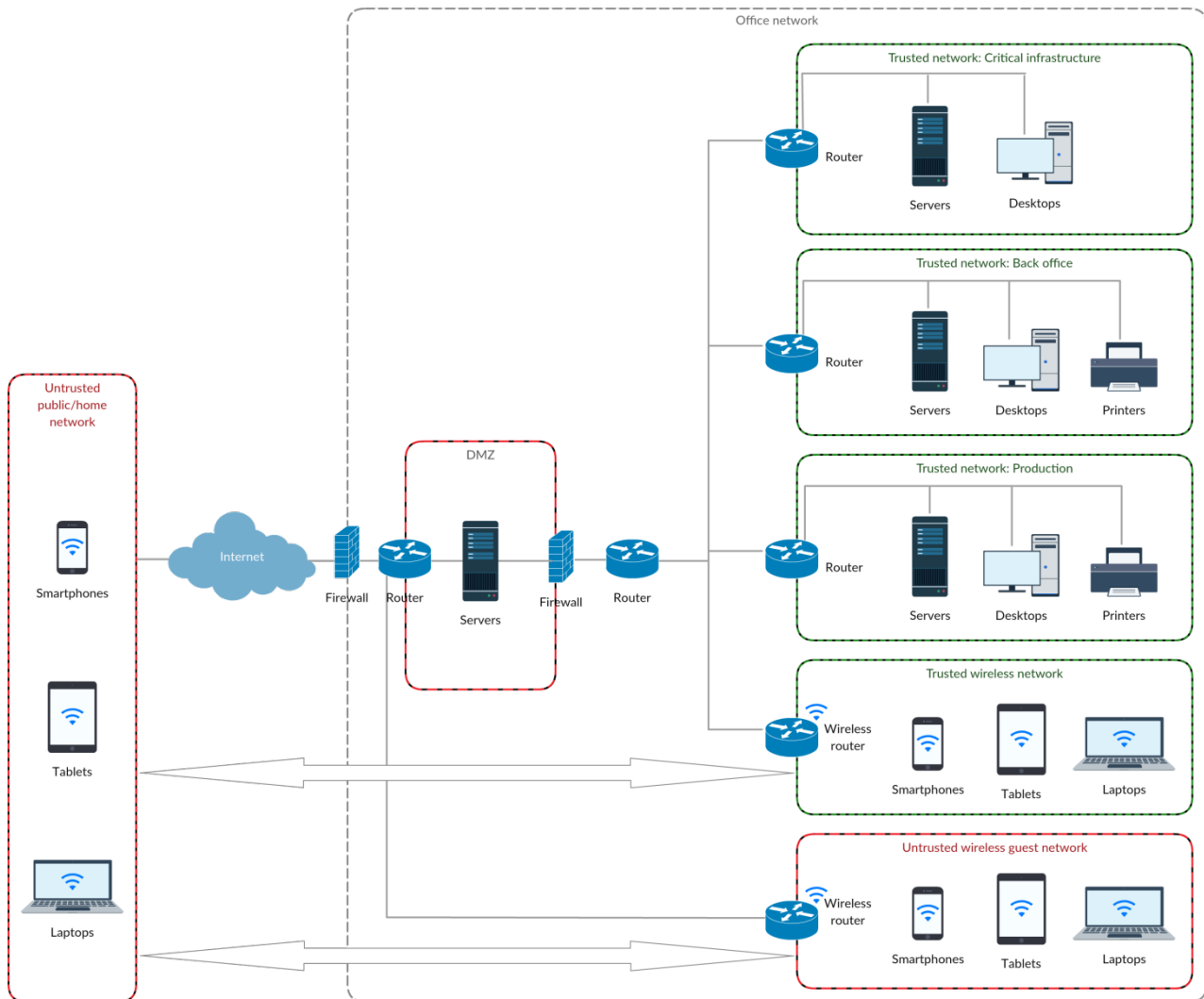


Image 3: Medium to large office network with demilitarized zone (DMZ)

It is important to distinguish between the different types of servers and the clients they are serving. Whether located in a dedicated network zone or not, these server(s) will provide internal services to clients, such as file storage, print services or ERP. At the same time, one or more servers may be in use as mail servers, web servers or FTP servers, providing services to clients outside the network. Although medium to large networks can be operated with both internal- and external-facing servers in an internal zone, an extra security layer can be added when internet-facing servers are to be operated from within the network. The demilitarized zone (DMZ) is a logical sub-network which explicitly contains only those

services that need to receive communication requests from outside the network. To prevent any unauthorized access to the internal network, contact between servers in the DMZ and internal network zones should be limited to those required for services to function correctly (such as email). In this scenario, the two network-level firewalls play an important role, as they need to ensure that almost all outside traffic ends up in the DMZ, unless requested by an internal client. Any contact between services in the DMZ and internal services should be scrutinized carefully.

For larger businesses that have multiple office locations, network layout becomes a bit more complicated. For all locations, local services are often duplicated, while external facing servers may or may not be deployed to all locations. However, the basic premise is still the same as for a company with only one office. The internet connection will be routed through a series of network-level hardware that filters out malicious traffic and routes it to either a server in the DMZ or one of the internal network zones.

There are many devices that do not fit the traditional networking paradigm. Employees may be using mobile devices that are sometimes used within the enterprise network, sometimes on the outside. Whether these are company-issued or not, they will need to conform with security policies when connecting to the enterprise network. The same goes for devices that are physically located outside the network, but can access resources within the network, such as clients connecting through a VPN. Security for these types of devices depends on the hardware components as well as the software-based enforcement of security policies.

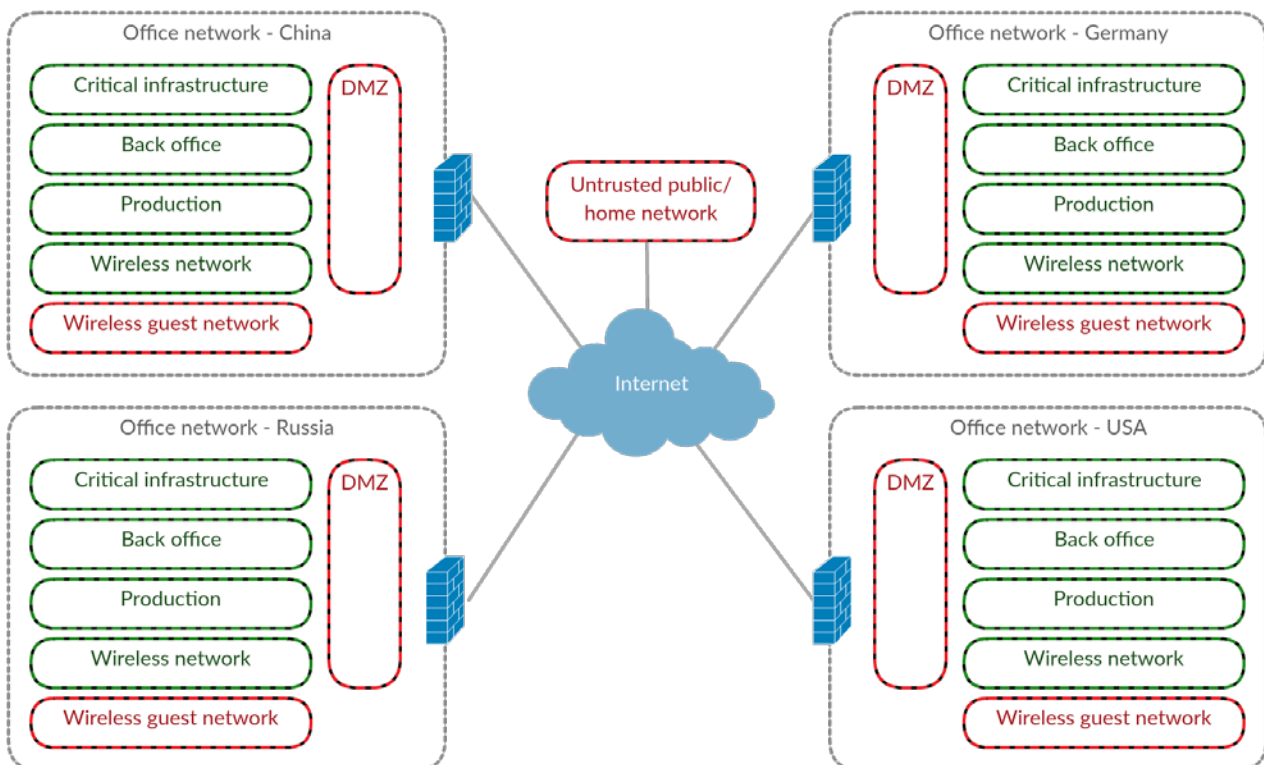


Image 4: Medium to large office network with DMZ, spread over multiple locations

With the physical network layout organized, logical units for network clients are relatively easy to set up. Ideally, each network zone will have one group of clients that all share the same role. In some cases, a network zone may have clients in more than one role, in which case multiple groups will need to be

created. This client structure should be reflected in the network's organization units. When using Windows-based networks, this will usually be an Active Directory structure, where each client role is assigned its own Organizational Unit, which contains the applicable policies.

1.2. Security components

Some security measures are implemented on the hardware level, as shown in the network diagrams in chapter 1.1. A router with built-in firewall, or a dedicated firewall device, is a great physical security measure that filters out a lot of traffic, but it cannot provide full operational security on its own. Any network security policy must be a combination of different layers, combining solutions to build an all-encompassing security construct. Some of those layers will be positioned on the hardware level, others are software solutions. Some will provide security by analyzing network traffic, others will limit dangerous activities on clients. But none of them suffice on their own: make sure that security components cover all possible points of entry, and that they work together effectively.

The network diagram can be used as a starting point to find out which security components need to be applied and where. Other than deploying hardware-based measures, individual network devices should also be secured. For each of the devices or device categories in the network diagram, consider what type of traffic it will send and receive, which use will be made of it, and what its importance to the enterprise is. One measure is to install local security software on clients and servers, to ensure that malware cannot be spread to and from individual clients. Additionally, sensitive servers should be protected. For mail servers, inbound and outbound emails should be scanned for malware (with the additional benefit of adding spam filters). Chapter 3 describes the possibilities to deploy G DATA software to critical network devices to provide maximum protection.

2. Choosing a solution

With network layout and client management properly organized, an informed decision can be made about which G DATA business solution to install. Based on the enterprise's needs, customers can select the solution which best applies to their network. Whether maximum security is required, flexibility, performance, or all of the above, the combinations of modules present in G DATA's business solutions will fit every network. It is important to find out which security modules are needed to optimally secure the network.

2.1. G DATA business solutions

Malware protection forms the baseline of G DATA's business portfolio. Every solution, starting with the entry-level Antivirus Business, contains the Antivirus module, which combines techniques such as signature-based protection and heuristic approaches to provide excellent client-based protection. Its active hybrid technology combines two engines for optimal detection rates. The G DATA CloseGap engine optimizes performance while detecting even locally confined threats. The BankGuard module provides additional protection while using online banking services, while ReportManager allows administrators to gain insight into the state of their network and connected clients. Mobile device management integrates Android and iOS devices into G DATA's management panel, to enable security management and privacy and anti-theft measures.

Client Security Business adds G DATA Firewall, a host-based intrusion prevention system (HIPS) which monitors client network traffic to prevent unwanted access to client systems. The client-based AntiSpam module provides protection against unwanted and infected emails through network-level scans as well as a plugin for Microsoft Outlook. Finally, Endpoint Protection Business serves companies that want to centrally manage security policies, such as device control or internet usage time.

Some modules are available separately. Exchange Mail Security provides spam and malware filtering capabilities for mail servers on protocol level and can be installed as a standalone gateway. Its plugin for Microsoft Exchange seamlessly integrates malware protection and antispam with Microsoft Exchange Server. Mail security for Sendmail/Postfix servers is available through the optional Linux Mail Security Gateway module. The Backup module allows administrators to flexibly schedule file-based backups for all clients in the network to prevent data loss in case of emergency. Patch Management helps save management costs on patch testing and deployment. It features an integrated solution to obtain and distribute the latest patches for software from all popular vendors. Using Network Monitoring, administrators can keep an eye on the status of their complete network infrastructure. Finally, the Linux Web Security Gateway module provides antivirus and antispam capabilities for Squid-based web proxies.

To decide which software to deploy, select the solution that offers the modules that are required. Make sure that all network entities are being protected by the chosen solution: (mail) servers, network clients, mobile devices. Mix and match modules to find the network's optimal solution. A full overview of our G DATA business solutions can be found on our website at <http://www.gdatasoftware.com/business>.

2.2. System requirements

To ensure problem-free deployment, the system requirements of G DATA software should be compared to the hardware that is currently in use in the enterprise network. Make sure that all servers and clients that should be protected meet the system requirements, updating and standardizing hardware deployments if necessary. G DATA optimizes its software for use on a wide range of server and client operating systems and hardware, so for most networks, deployment will be problem-free. A dedicated server is not required, but recommended for large networks.

G DATA ManagementServer

- Operating system: Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Server 2003
- RAM: 1 GB

G DATA Administrator/G DATA WebAdministrator/G DATA MailSecurity Administrator

- Operating system: Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows XP SP3 (32-bit), Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Server 2003

G DATA MobileAdministrator

- Operating system: Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2008 R2

G DATA Security Client

- Operating system: Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista SP1, Windows XP SP3 (32-bit), Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Server 2003
- RAM: 1 GB

G DATA Security Client for Linux

- Operating system: 32- and 64-bit editions of Debian 7, 8 and 9, OpenSUSE Leap 42.1 (64-bit) and Leap 42.2 (64-bit), Suse Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP4¹ and 12 (64-bit), Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.11, 6.6 and 7.0 (64-bit), Ubuntu 14.04.1 LTS and 16.04, CentOS 5.11, 6.6 and 7.0 (64-bit), Fedora 24 and 25

G DATA Security Client for Mac

- Operating system: Mac OS X 10.7 or higher

G DATA Mobile Device Management for Android

- Operating system: Android 4.0 or higher

¹ When using G DATA Security Client for Linux 14.1 or higher on Suse Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP4, the Suse Linux Enterprise 11 Security Module must be installed first.

G DATA Mobile Device Management for iOS

- Operating system: iOS 7.0 or higher

G DATA Exchange Mail Security (64-bit Exchange plugin)

- Mail server: Microsoft Exchange Server 2016, Microsoft Exchange Server 2013, Microsoft Exchange Server 2010, or Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 SP1

G DATA MailSecurity MailGateway

- Operating system: Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows XP SP3 (32-bit), Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Server 2003
- RAM: 1 GB

G DATA ManagementServer and G DATA Administrator require Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0, which will be automatically installed alongside. WebAdministrator and MobileAdministrator also require Microsoft .NET Framework to be installed. Additionally, as they are web services, the latter two require Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) to have been installed beforehand. To log in to WebAdministrator, the local browser needs to have the Microsoft Silverlight plugin installed. For storage, G DATA ManagementServer uses an SQL server. Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express will be installed, or an existing instance of Microsoft SQL Server (Express) can be used². When using G DATA ManagementServer/G DATA MailSecurity MailGateway with a local SQL database or other demanding applications on the same computer, the following recommended system requirements apply:

- RAM: 4 GB
- CPU: multicore

2.3. Licensing

Once a solution has been decided upon, information about licensing can be obtained from the G DATA website³ or an official sales partner. In general, business licenses are available for deployments of 5 clients and more. The price of individual licenses depends on the solution chosen, eventual add-on modules, and the number of clients being deployed.

² Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express does not support Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008/2003. On those systems, manually install Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Express before installing ManagementServer or use an existing database instance.

³ See www.gdatasoftware.com.

3. Installation scenarios

After deciding on an appropriate G DATA solution for the network, deployment needs to be planned. G DATA solutions make use of the client-server model. A central server application manages any number of clients in the network, optionally supported by a secondary server and one or more subnet servers. On each client machine, client software manages security, backup, patching and other processes. Deployment first focuses on setting up one or more servers, which are then used to deploy client software to network machines. Whether to use one or more servers depends on the network layout. Small networks can be managed by one local ManagementServer, while deployments on large networks or at different locations can take advantage of a setup with multiple ManagementServers, remotely managed by a central MasterAdmin installation.

G DATA solutions can be deployed as a locally managed product or as a managed service. The former gives administrators the flexibility they need to configure the solution to their needs at any time, but requires time and effort in order to get acquainted with the solution and tailor it to the network's needs. The latter offloads management duties to a managed service partner, who remotely configures and administers the solution, which does not require any interaction from the local administrator.

Configuration of G DATA solutions takes place using G DATA Administrator, G DATA WebAdministrator and/or G DATA MobileAdministrator. This range of tools offers configuration possibilities including local administration, remote administration, browser-based access and mobile configuration. For more information about the administration tools and their use cases, see chapter 5.

3.1. Local deployment

The client-server model of G DATA can be applied to every network configuration. An installation of one or more server components (G DATA ManagementServer and its secondary or subnet server(s), and G DATA MailSecurity) is combined with a client software component on every client (G DATA Security Client and G DATA Internet Security for Android). The various component types and the deployment possibilities for the central ManagementServer component will be discussed, based on the network layout diagrams presented in chapter 1.1.

3.1.1. Network components

G DATA solutions consist of multiple network components. Depending on the network layout and the network requirements, various components may be installed. ManagementServer is central to the client-server based protection concept and will take a central place in every deployment. There are various ways to deploy it; chapter 3.1.2 provides examples for networks ranging from small offices to large corporate scenarios.

The client component (G DATA Security Client) will be installed on network PCs. Security Client will provide several protection layers for Windows, Mac and Linux devices. Android devices can be protected by G DATA Internet Security for Android, while iOS devices are secured by the iOS Device Management component.

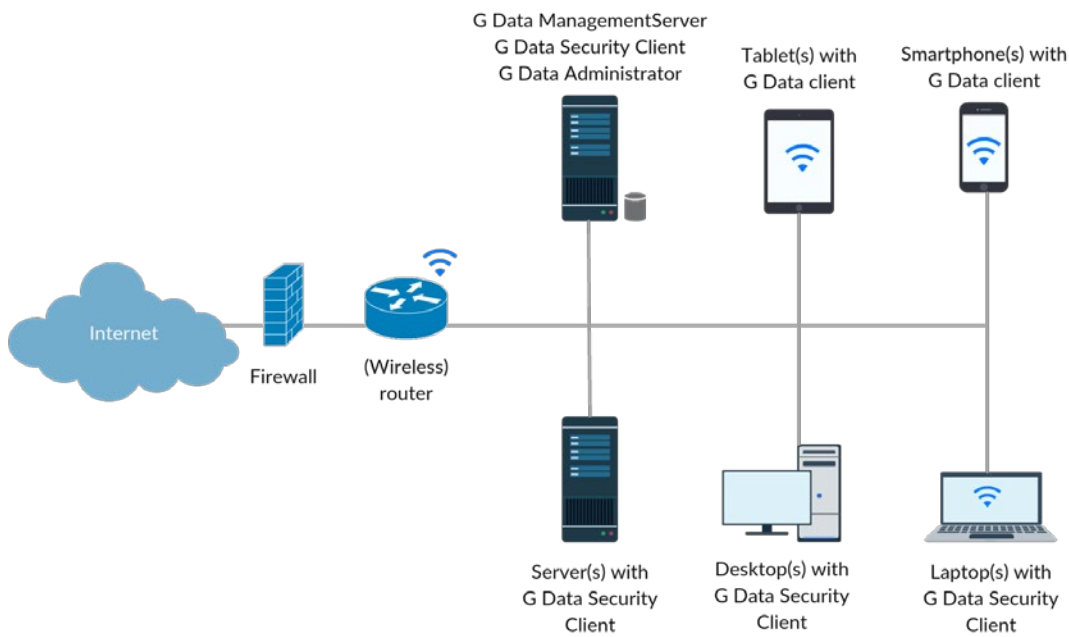


Image 5: Small office network deployment

For networks that host their own mail server, the mail server protection component MailSecurity is available as an optional module, which scans mails for malware and spam. MailSecurity can be installed as a standalone product on its own server, filtering traffic before it hits the mail server, or as a plugin for Microsoft Exchange Server or Sendmail/Postfix.

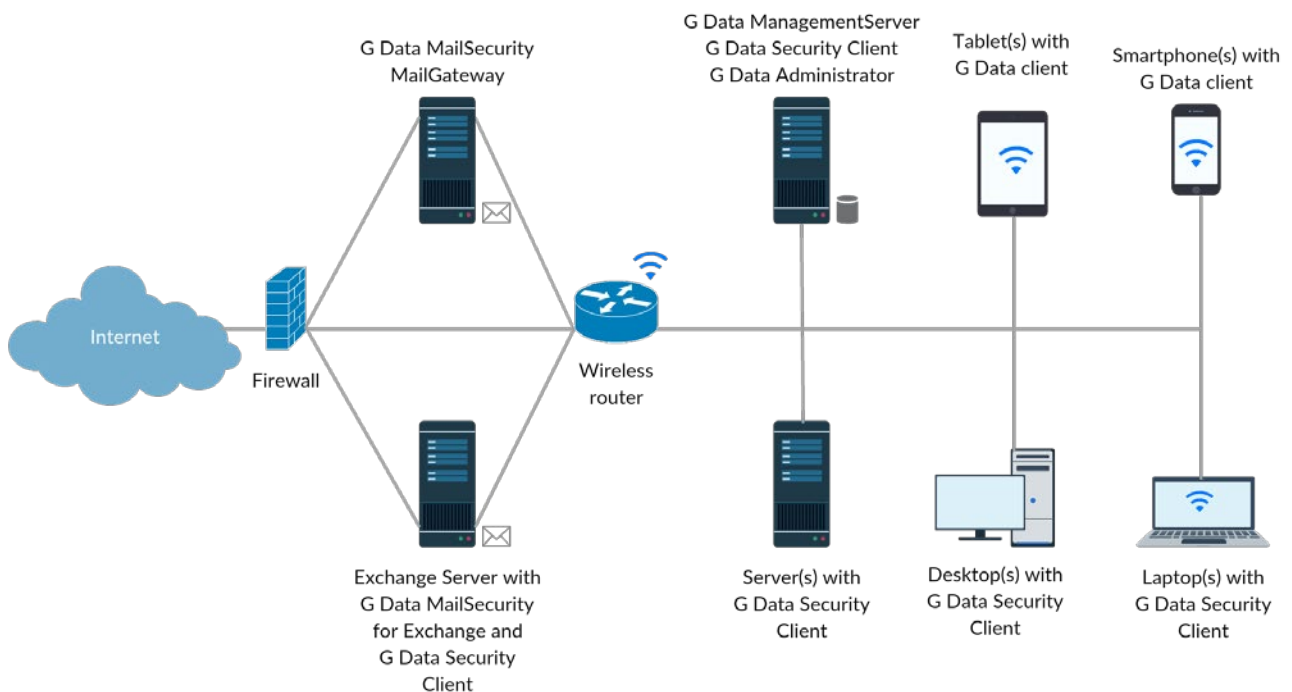


Image 6: Small office network with mail server deployment

3.1.2. ManagementServer deployment

Which deployment type should be chosen for ManagementServer depends entirely on the network. Current and future properties of the network should be taken into account, such as the type of infrastructure, the number of clients, and the types of client access. The scenarios below provide an indication of what a G DATA deployment looks like for several types of networks. Because of the modular nature of the solutions, deployment can be tailored to each network's circumstances. In addition, deciding on one deployment scenario does not mean that the installation cannot be adapted at a later time. If the network grows beyond a certain number of clients, components can be moved around the network and additional (subnet) servers can be deployed.

G DATA solutions' main installation will be the server component, G DATA ManagementServer. For performance reasons, it is not recommended to install ManagementServer on one of the clients that is also used for daily tasks, but it is possible: ManagementServer does not require a server operating system, so it can easily be installed on Windows 10 or any other supported Windows desktop operating system – a viable alternative for small office networks. When using a dedicated server, it does not need to have a server operating system or dedicated server hardware, but the machine should not be used for any other purpose than to host ManagementServer. Be very careful when installing other services on the same server, especially database, mail security, domain controller or web server services. The more services are run from the same machine, the more all of them will be impacted, leading to delays during peak traffic hours. Similarly, the number of clients being served has direct effects on server performance. For networks with a small number of clients, the load will be relatively small, allowing for more services to be run from the same server. Larger networks may hit the boundaries of server performance sooner, requiring services to be moved to a dedicated server or split over multiple servers.

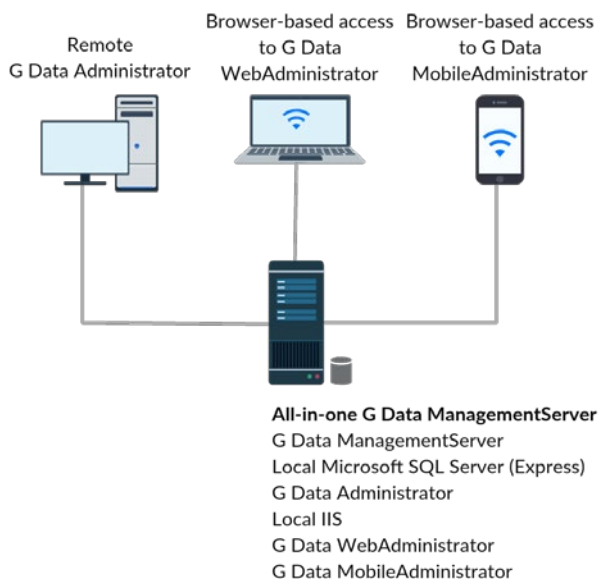


Image 7: All-in-one ManagementServer deployment

On the server level, the easiest type of deployment is an all-in-one deployment. For networks that have a relatively small number of clients, or that do not have a dedicated server, all components of the ManagementServer deployment can be installed on the same machine. This includes the ManagementServer installation, as well as a local installation of Microsoft SQL Server or the included

Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express, and a local installation of G DATA Administrator. When remote administration capabilities are required, Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) and G DATA WebAdministrator or MobileAdministrator can be deployed to the same machine as well.

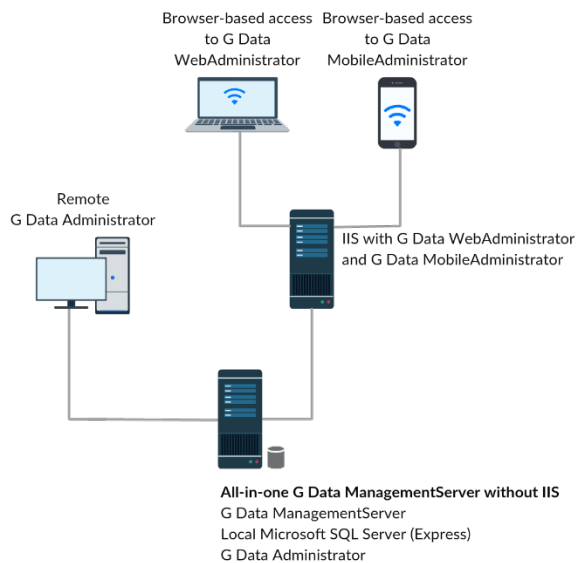


Image 8: ManagementServer deployment with dedicated web server

Installing ManagementServer and its database and administration components on one machine results in a server that is easily manageable, but prone to performance issues if the network grows. Optionally, IIS and administration components can be deployed to their own web server. Especially networks that already have an IIS server do not need an additional IIS installation on the ManagementServer. WebAdministrator and MobileAdministrator can be easily deployed to any existing IIS server, starting at IIS 5.1/Windows XP (WebAdministrator) or IIS 7.5/Windows 7 (MobileAdministrator). As detailed in the chapter on network layouts (see chapter 1.1), the web server can be located either in the network itself, or in the DMZ.

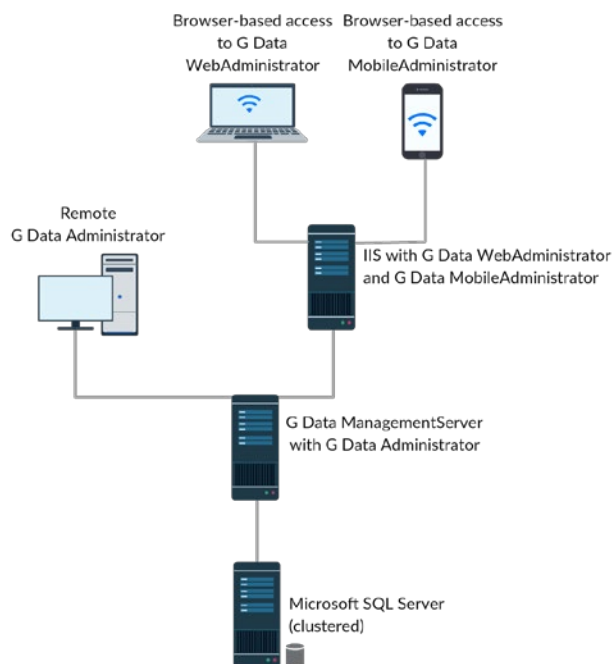


Image 9: ManagementServer deployment with dedicated (clustered) SQL server

Although ManagementServer has built-in load limit capabilities (see chapter 7.5), altering the deployment can be an effective solution when dealing with large networks. Server load can be reduced by deploying an (optionally clustered) Microsoft SQL Server. Hosting the ManagementServer database on a dedicated SQL server improves the performance on the ManagementServer by offloading its database transactions. Although it is possible to use a dedicated SQL server right from the beginning, the most common use case will be a migration scenario, when it turns out the number of clients has grown too large to be managed by a database on the ManagementServer itself. That process is simple: after installing and configuring Microsoft SQL Server on its dedicated server, the GdmmsConfig.exe tool can be used to migrate the database (see chapter 4.7).

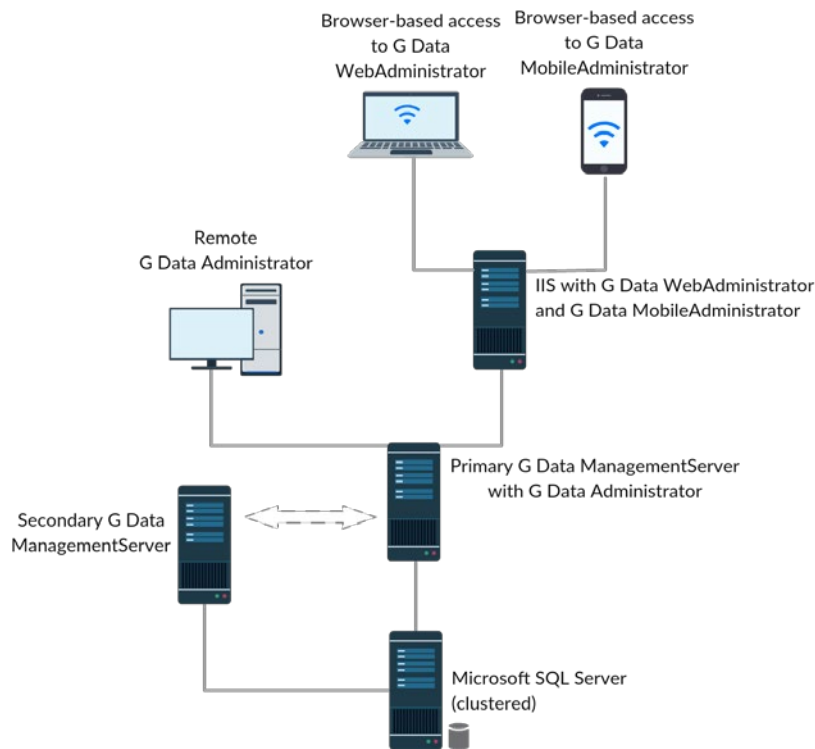


Image 10: ManagementServer deployment with secondary ManagementServer

A medium to large office network can profit from installing a secondary ManagementServer as a fallback measure. The secondary ManagementServer is installed on another server and functions parallel to the primary ManagementServer. If the main ManagementServer is unavailable for more than an hour, clients will connect to the secondary server to obtain updates. The main and secondary ManagementServer share the same database, so this option should only be used if the database is hosted on an external database instance. While the two servers do share the same database, they obtain updates from G DATA's update server autonomously. This provides extra redundancy in case one of the servers loses internet connectivity. In combination with a dedicated, clustered SQL server, the secondary server deployment type provides a high reliability, preventing problems when hardware issues occur.

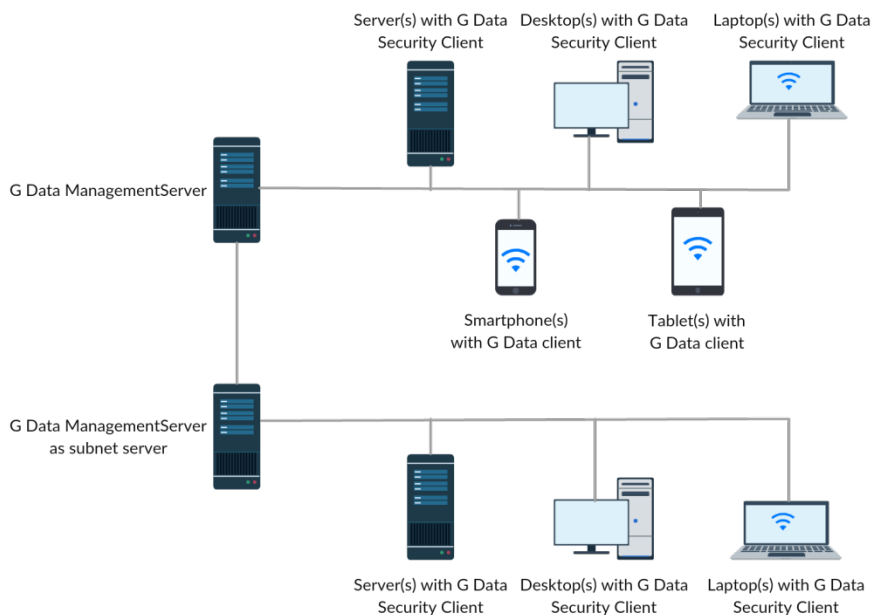


Image 11: ManagementServer deployment with subnet server

To ease the load, G DATA ManagementServer supports the deployment of one or more subnet servers that manage subsets of clients, reducing the amount of performance required from the main ManagementServer. This is especially useful for large networks and networks spanning several branch offices. A subnet server is an installation of ManagementServer that takes care of a subset of clients. It reduces network load, as the ManagementServer only has to contact the subnet server, which will then serve its clients automatically. Using subnet servers, a single ManagementServer deployment can service thousands of clients effortlessly. Subnet servers are typically installed after deploying the main and/or secondary server and their clients, if and when the circumstances require it. The main ManagementServer does not need to be located in the same physical network as the subnet server (for example, branch offices can be managed by subnet servers that connect to a central ManagementServer).

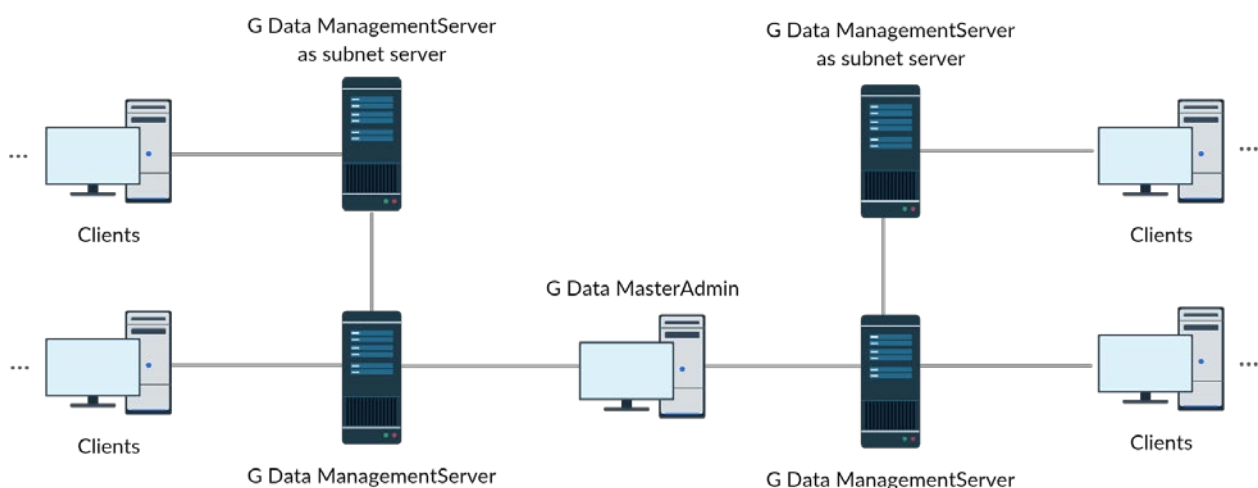


Image 12: ManagementServer deployment with MasterAdmin

A large company can divide its clients over multiple ManagementServers. In this case, administration can be centralized by adding all ManagementServers to a MasterAdmin deployment. The

ManagementServers function independently from each other, but are centrally managed by a MasterAdmin installation. This requires the appropriate port forwarding settings to make sure that the servers can be reached over the internet. Apart from that, it looks much like a regularly managed deployment. Using MasterAdmin, administrators have access to all modules and settings. More information about administering servers using MasterAdmin can be found in chapter 5.4.

Regardless of the size of the network, the effort that has been put into organizing the network will be rewarded when using a G DATA solution. Its security modules have been organized around the concept of client groups. Security settings, scan or backup tasks, and every other aspect of security can be applied to single clients or to groups of clients. Groups can be manually created and contain any number of clients, either by mirroring a network zone and/or client role, or by grouping them according to other attributes. For networks that have organized clients in Active Directory Organizational Units (OU), the effort will be reduced even further, as client groups can be linked to OUs to automatically inherit their list of clients.

3.2. Managed Endpoint Security and Managed Endpoint Security Powered by Microsoft Azure

An alternative to local deployment and administration is the use of G DATA's managed service solutions. G DATA partners that offer this service help their customers by taking all work out of their hands. Deployment as well as management of the complete solution will be taken care of by the partner. For customers, the managed approach saves a lot of time and effort during both the deployment phase and the management cycle. Employees do not need to be trained to manage the security solution, and administrators can focus on other management tasks. For partners, Managed Endpoint Security helps reach those customers who would not have considered using a locally managed G DATA solution. When choosing Managed Endpoint Security Powered by Microsoft Azure, partners gain the additional benefits of scalability, availability and plannable costs.

Management tasks are carried out remotely, without any effort by the local administrator. The proposition not only greatly simplifies deployment, but it also represents a transparent license model. Partners charge enterprises monthly for the exact number of clients in use, allowing monthly fluctuations as clients are added or removed.

On the client side, a Managed Endpoint Security deployment functions just like a local deployment as detailed in the rest of this guide. However, no effort needs to be put in management. All tasks will be taken care of remotely by the partner that provides the service. Partners administer Managed Endpoint Security networks remotely using MasterAdmin (see chapter 5.4).

4. Deployment

Whether a deployment is carried out by a local administrator or remotely by a managed service partner, several scenarios can be followed, depending on whether the solution will be installed as an upgrade or as a clean installation. In any case it is recommended to run a trial deployment before affecting the physical network. A virtual network or a subset of the physical network can be used to install the G DATA solution on server and clients, to see if any problems arise. Make sure that the trial is run across a group of clients that represents all client roles (e.g. IT, back office, R&D) to accurately test deployment results across the whole network. The test run as well as the actual deployment of a G DATA security solution should be carried out in accordance with existing corporate deployment policies, if available. For small organizations, this can mean a fairly straight-forward process, but larger enterprises may have to develop a project plan, documenting deployment planning, risk assessment and more.

Every deployment is carried out in several stages. Because G DATA solutions have been designed as server-client solutions, the first step is installing and setting up the server component(s). After the installation, server settings (such as update schedule and distribution) and default client settings should be configured to make sure that clients are properly protected upon rollout. After completing the actual deployment phase, check if all clients have been properly deployed. With all clients regularly connecting to the main ManagementServer, settings can be customized for each client.

G DATA MailSecurity, acquired as optional module, is a stand-alone solution. As such, it has a separate installer, but furthermore, the configuration is slightly different from the other security solutions. During the installation, MailSecurity will be configured according to its location in the network (see chapter 3.1.1). Afterwards, its protection and anti-spam measures can be customized completely.

4.1. Preparation

Before deploying any server or client installations, it is essential that the systems meet a certain baseline. Run Windows Update on the server(s) where G DATA ManagementServer will be installed and install all available security updates. If Microsoft .NET Framework is present, it should be updated as well. Finally, clients that are to be installed remotely need to be prepared with the proper access permissions (see chapter 4.8).

Before installing a security solution to any machine, it should be ensured that there is no malware present. Existing malware can interfere with the installation of security software, compromising system security. For this purpose, the installation medium of every G DATA business solution doubles as a bootable medium with its own Linux-based operating system⁴. When starting from the boot medium, the G DATA boot environment allows administrators to carry out a complete malware scan of all local hard disks. This makes sure that there are no traces of malware left on the system. For smaller networks, it is recommended to use the boot medium on all servers and clients before installing G DATA software. For larger networks, however, this is not always an option: each client has to be booted from the boot medium manually, and a full system scan will take some time, leading to a long downtime for servers. In

⁴ If the original physical installation medium is not available, install and run G DATA Boot Medium Wizard, which creates a G DATA boot medium (CD, DVD or USB stick).

that case, the scan could be executed on only a limited number of systems, such as high-priority or high-risk clients and on servers that are suspected to have been infected with malware.

4.2. Clean installation

When no G DATA solution has been previously deployed to the network, all components can be deployed as a clean installation. This means that the main server, potential secondary or subnet servers, local database instance, and clients will all be set up from scratch. Using the default settings, this is an easy procedure. The server component(s) will be installed first, followed by administration tools, clients and mail server security. With minimal configuration effort, a clean installation can be carried out within a few hours. However, as with any deployment, installing a G DATA solution requires that the administrator knows how the network is structured. Components should be installed on the appropriate targets and a basic configuration should be carried out. Chapters 1, 2 and 3 provide guidance on network structure.

4.2.1. Server

During the ManagementServer installation, several options need to be set, such as the server mode (main ManagementServer, secondary ManagementServer or subnet server), and the database configuration. These decisions fully depend on the network structure and the resulting deployment decisions.

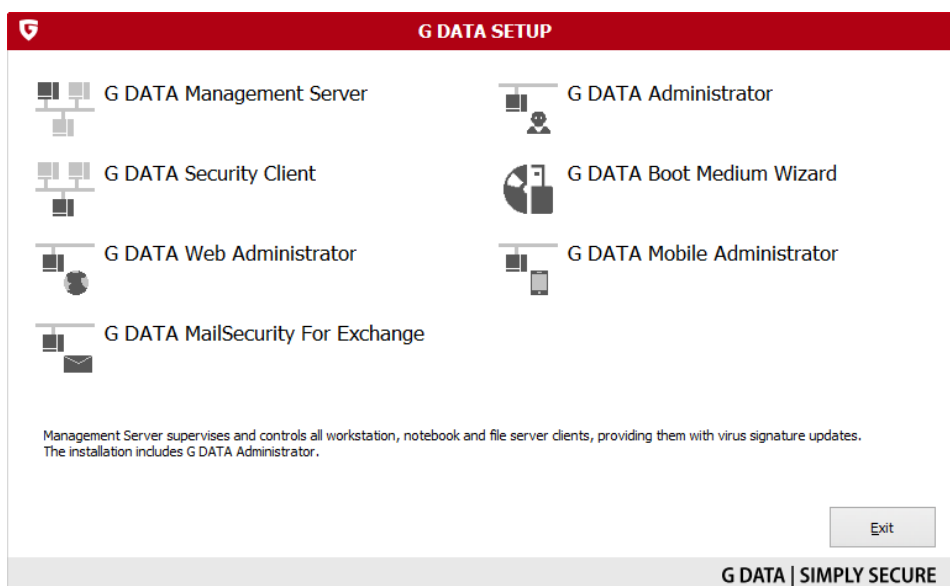


Image 13: G DATA installation medium, product selection

The main ManagementServer installation is the first component to be installed. It is the central server that will coordinate all clients, potentially supported by a secondary server or one or more subnet servers. ManagementServer can be installed from the G DATA installation medium by selecting G DATA MANAGEMENT SERVER in the component selection window. While the installation wizard itself is very straightforward, two steps need additional attention.

ManagementServer can be installed as a main server, a secondary server or a subnet server. The first installation will be a main server. If the network layout requires the deployment of a secondary server or subnet server (see chapter 3.1.2 for more information about typical secondary and subnet server deployment scenarios), these can be installed on their respective machines after finishing the installation

and initial configuration of the main server. Chapter 4.10 details the installation procedure for a subnet server.

After selecting the server type, the database type has to be selected. For networks up to 1000 clients, a local installation of Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express will suffice. If the Express option is selected, the installation wizard will automatically install and configure the local database server instance and required database. For networks with more than 1000 clients, or scenarios where a secondary server will be used, ManagementServer should be configured to use an existing Microsoft SQL Server instance on a separate, dedicated server. When using an existing Microsoft SQL Server instance, it must be made sure that the database server is reachable on ports UDP 1434 and TCP 1433 (default values). If you are reinstalling ManagementServer on a machine that already has SQL Server Express and a ManagementServer database, you should also choose the option to use an existing instance. The connection to the SQL Server (Express) instance can be configured through the setup wizard as soon as installation and activation are completed.

The installation of Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express can only be carried out on systems with Windows 7/Windows Server 2008 R2 or newer, as it does not support older systems. On those systems, manually install Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Express before installing ManagementServer or use a database instance on another machine. Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Express can be downloaded from the Microsoft website⁵. Start the downloaded file and choose **INSTALLATION > NEW INSTALLATION OR ADD FEATURES TO AN EXISTING INSTALLATION**. After checking the prerequisites and preparing the setup support files, the installation wizard is started. The installation's default settings need not be changed: the wizard will install the database engine with a named database instance. After installing the SQL server, run the ManagementServer installation and select the option to use an existing database instance. The ManagementServer installation wizard will display configuration settings for the database after the setup has completed. Select the database instance that has been configured by the installation of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Express and enter a name for the database itself.

After the installation procedure is completed, the installation wizard will ask for information about solution activation. When the solution has not been activated before, the license key can be entered to automatically activate the software and request a user name and password. User name and password are then saved in the solution's configuration, so that updates can be downloaded automatically. If the solution has been activated before and the license is still valid, the user name and password can be entered manually. Alternatively, activation can be postponed. Manual activation afterwards is supported (see chapter 4.6), but not recommended. Without an activated solution, only the very basic functionality will be available. Even if the Endpoint Protection Business or Client Security Business solution was bought, only the functionality of the Antivirus Business solution will be available until the software is activated. Moreover, without activation no program file and virus signature updates can be downloaded. This severely limits the effectiveness of the various protection layers.

The ManagementServer installation will have installed Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 if it was not already present on the server. It is recommended to use Windows Update after installing ManagementServer to check for updates for Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0. A reboot after installation is recommended in any case.

⁵ See <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=30438>.

Once the installation for the main server has been carried out, the next step depends on the deployment wishes. First, the main server should be configured (see chapter 4.5). If a secondary server should be deployed to the network, the ManagementServer installation wizard should be run on the respective server to install it. If subnet servers are to be deployed, this should take place after deploying the clients (see chapter 4.10). For all servers, it should be made sure that the TCP ports that are used for communication are available. If a network-level or software firewall is in use, a number of ports should be opened. See chapter 4.4 for more information about the TCP ports that G DATA server and clients use.

4.2.2. Administration

After the main server and eventual secondary server are up and running, consider the administration requirements. Every ManagementServer installation includes a local installation of the G DATA Administrator tool, which allows administrators to configure ManagementServer. If the server is going to be configured remotely, which is strongly recommended, there are several possibilities: installing G DATA Administrator on another client, installing G DATA WebAdministrator to configure ManagementServer remotely from any browser, or installing G DATA MobileAdministrator to administer the server remotely using a smartphone or tablet. The options for remote administration are documented in chapter 5.

4.2.3. Clients

As soon as ManagementServer and Administrator have been deployed, G DATA Security Client should be distributed to all Windows, Linux and Mac clients. To protect the server itself from malware, it is recommended to install G DATA Security Client on the server as well. Like other network clients, the remote installation possibility is the easiest way to do this. Android and iOS clients can also be deployed as soon as ManagementServer and Administrator have been installed. See chapter 4.8 for more information about client deployment.

4.2.4. Mail server security

If the deployment includes G DATA MailSecurity MailGateway, Exchange Mail Security or Linux Mail Security Gateway, they should be installed after ManagementServer has been deployed. MailGateway functions as an extra security layer in front of the actual mail server, processing all inbound and outbound mail. This can be achieved in two ways: by installing MailGateway on the mail server itself, or by setting it up as a gateway on a different server. Exchange and Linux mail servers (Sendmail/Postfix) can be secured using the respective modules.

4.2.4.1. G DATA Exchange Mail Security

The Exchange plugin of G DATA MailSecurity should be installed on all Exchange servers that are running Mailbox or Hub Transport roles. When installing Exchange Mail Security in a network with multiple Active Directory Domain Controllers, the setup wizard requires the tool Repadmin.exe to be present. Repadmin.exe is available as part of the Active Directory Domain Services role, the Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services role and the Active Directory Domain Services Tools (Remote Server Administration Tools). Before starting the installation wizard of Exchange Mail Security, make sure one or more of these components are present.

The Exchange plugin reports to G DATA ManagementServer, which must have been installed beforehand. After the Exchange plugin installation concludes, it will register itself with the ManagementServer. In order to prevent unauthorized access to the ManagementServer, locally installed clients must be authorized through the CLIENTS module of G DATA Administrator before they are fully served.

By logging in to the ManagementServer, all settings of the Exchange plugin can be managed. It is recommended to immediately schedule an on-demand scan covering the whole Exchange store (see chapter 17.1.1.2), to make sure that no viruses are left from before the deployment.

4.2.4.2. G DATA Linux Mail Security Gateway

Antivirus and AntiSpam functionality for Sendmail and Postfix servers are provided through the Linux Mail Security Gateway module. It can be deployed as part of G DATA Security Client for Linux (see chapter 4.8.3) and requires the Amavis plugin framework.

4.2.4.3. G DATA MailSecurity MailGateway

If the existing mail server can deal with the CPU and RAM load, installing MailGateway on the same machine is possible. This has the advantage that no changes to the mail server's IP address need to be made. However, the mail server software then needs to be reconfigured to use different ports for inbound and outbound mail. Alternatively, MailGateway can be installed on a dedicated gateway server, filtering email before it reaches the mail server. See chapter 17.3.1 for more information about deployment types and port settings for MailGateway.

Regardless of the server on which MailGateway is installed, G DATA Security Client should be deployed to the same server first. Not only will this protect the local server's file system from malware, but MailGateway will also automatically integrate Security Client's virus signatures into its malware scan.

The installation wizard of MailGateway is straightforward. Optionally, it can install a local database server (Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 Express). This enables statistical assessment of email messages (see chapter 17.3.1) and greylisting (see chapter 17.3.4.4), but is not required.

MailGateway's settings are configured using G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, which is installed automatically alongside MailGateway. Like G DATA Administrator, which remotely configures G DATA ManagementServer, MailSecurity Administrator does not need to be installed on the same server as the MailGateway component itself. Using the installation medium, MailSecurity Administrator can be installed on any network client that can access the MailGateway server. To allow MailSecurity Administrator to contact the MailGateway server, access on TCP port 7182 should be allowed.

4.3. Upgrade installation

4.3.1. G DATA ManagementServer

For existing deployments of G DATA ManagementServer and its clients, the upgrade path is usually very simple. There are two ways of upgrading a main ManagementServer installation. The most straightforward way is to use the Internet Update tool to download and install the new version (see

chapter 4.6). If a secondary server has been deployed, it will be automatically informed by the main server as soon as the main server upgrade has been deployed and subsequently upgrade itself.

For version upgrades where a direct upgrade is not possible, the main ManagementServer should be uninstalled before the new version can be deployed. The existing database should not be removed; it can be used in the new version and will be converted if required. If any manual changes have been made to the configuration files (using Config.xml, for example; see chapter 18.2), these will have to be reconfigured after the reinstallation. During the installation of the new version, make sure to select the option to use an existing database instance. After the installation, the existing database can be selected through the setup wizard's interface. The same process applies to a secondary server. At its next start, G DATA Administrator will show all clients and settings as they were before. For an extra layer of security, the old database should be backed up before removing the ManagementServer (see chapter 4.7). In case of problems during the installation the new version, a downgrade or reinstall can be carried out before restoring the original database.

In most cases, subnet servers are upgraded automatically after the main ManagementServer has been upgraded. Only subnet servers with ManagementServer version 12 require a manual installation of a database server, before they can be updated to version 14. On such systems, install Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express (Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7 and newer) or Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Express (Windows Server 2003/2008/Windows Vista) manually (see chapter 4.2.1). After the SQL server has been installed, use the option PERMIT PROGRAM UPDATE on the OVERVIEW panel of the SERVERS module to permit the program update. After the update, use GdmmsConfig.exe on the subnet server to configure the connection to the database (see chapter 18.1).

4.3.2. G DATA Administrator/G DATA WebAdministrator/G DATA MobileAdministrator

The version of G DATA Administrator that is included with the installation of G DATA ManagementServer is automatically upgraded with ManagementServer itself. However, if you have previously installed a standalone version of G DATA Administrator, or if you have installed G DATA WebAdministrator or G DATA MobileAdministrator, these need to be manually updated by running the installation wizard of the new version. When using an outdated version of G DATA Administrator to log in to a newer version of ManagementServer, you will be prompted to update G DATA Administrator immediately.

4.3.3. G DATA Security Client

After the servers have been upgraded, the clients will be served with software upgrades. This happens as part of the regular software update mechanism: automatic program file updates or manual distribution (see chapter 7.3.2). For larger networks, peer to peer update distribution is recommended to make sure there is no performance loss on the server due to the large amount of traffic. As with all software distributions, it is important to make sure that there are no compatibility problems. Using staged software distribution, the updated client can be distributed to a small group at first, before generally deploying it across the network. Alternatively, a manual distribution across a small, representative test group can give insight into possible problems.

4.3.4. G DATA MailSecurity MailGateway

MailSecurity MailGateway can be updated through its MailSecurity Administrator interface. Under UPDATE, the current installed version of MailGateway and Administrator are shown. Click SOFTWARE UPDATE to initiate the update procedure, which is carried out seamlessly, similar to the way ManagementServer is updated by its Internet Update tool.

4.3.5. G DATA Exchange Mail Security

Like G DATA Security Client, Exchange Mail Security upgrades itself as soon as a new version is available on the ManagementServer. To make sure the latest version of the Exchange plugin is available, run the Internet Update tool on the ManagementServer and click UPDATE PROGRAM FILES (CLIENT). If the Exchange plugin has been configured to update its program files automatically, it will update itself upon its next connection to the ManagementServer. Alternatively, G DATA Administrator can be used to manually initiate an upgrade.

Due to changes in the installation procedure, Exchange Mail Security installations that were initially deployed at version 12 cannot be upgraded directly. In that case, the previous version of Exchange Mail Security should be uninstalled before installing the new version. When upgrading to the latest version, it should be ensured that Exchange Mail Security is installed on all Exchange servers that are running the Mailbox or Hub Transport roles.

4.4. Network configuration

The various components of G DATA solutions use the TCP/IP protocol for communication between servers and clients. Certain ports need to be available on servers and clients to enable control communication and update distribution. Make sure to configure network-level monitoring software and firewalls to allow traffic on those ports. In case of port conflicts, a manual reconfiguration of some of the port numbers is possible (see chapter 18.2).

Main/secondary ManagementServer

- Port 80 (TCP)
- Port 443 (TCP)
- Port 7161 (TCP)
- Port 7182 (TCP)
- Port 7183 (TCP)

Subnet servers

- Port 80 (TCP)
- Port 443 (TCP)
- Port 7161 (TCP)

Clients

- Port 7169 (TCP)

MailSecurity MailGateway server

- Port 7182 (TCP)

MailSecurity Exchange plugin

- Port 7171 (TCP)
- Port 7185...7195 (TCP)

If port 80 or 443 is already being used exclusively by another process, G DATA ManagementServer will select a random port upon starting and save the port number in Config.xml (see chapter 18.2).

In addition to port configuration, additional firewall configuration is required when using the PatchManager module (see chapter 15). Traffic between G DATA ManagementServer and the following URL always needs to be allowed:

URLs

gdata.cdn.heatsoftware.com

Depending on the software for which patches will be deployed, traffic between G DATA ManagementServer and the following URLs needs to be allowed:

Vendor	URLs
7-Zip	http://downloads.sourceforge.net
Adobe	ardownload.adobe.com
	armdl.adobe.com
	download.adobe.com
	swupdl.adobe.com
	www.adobe.com
Microsoft	go.microsoft.com
	download.windowsupdate.com
	www.download.windowsupdate.com
	download.skype.com
	download.microsoft.com
Mozilla	http://ftp.mozilla.org
UltraVNC	http://support1.uvnc.com
VideoLAN	http://download.videolan.org

4.5. Initial configuration

After finishing the installation of G DATA ManagementServer and the other components, the initial configuration of server and client settings will take place. Settings can be configured using G DATA Administrator, which has been automatically installed on the same machine as G DATA ManagementServer. If the server is to be configured remotely, set up G DATA WebAdministrator first or install G DATA Administrator on a network client with access to the main ManagementServer (see chapter 5). Regardless of the application that is used, administrators can log in with a local or domain administrator account.

4.5.1. Server setup wizard

There are a few settings that need to be configured before deploying the clients. The SERVER SETUP WIZARD, which is launched when first logging in to G DATA Administrator, helps take care of the most essential

settings and can be run in G DATA Administrator as well as G DATA WebAdministrator. After the initial setup, the wizard can still be launched from the **SERVERS > OVERVIEW** panel. Additionally, most options are available separately through the various configuration modules of G DATA Administrator.

The first step of the **SERVER SETUP WIZARD** covers client deployment. For the initial setup, this step can be skipped (in chapter 4.8, the various methods of client deployment will be covered). Important is the configuration of automatic internet updates. Note that these settings concern the download of virus signature updates and program file updates from G DATA's update server to ManagementServer. The subsequent distribution of updates to network clients can be configured at a later stage. If the solution has been registered during setup, user name and password will already have been filled in. Otherwise, the tool Internet Update can be used to register the solution and obtain a user name and password (see chapter 4.6). The update schedule for client virus signatures and client program files needs to be configured to meet the network's needs. Check the two schedules and alter if required. For servers that make use of a permanent internet connection, hourly update checks are recommended. The exact update time can be defined by entering minutes past the hour. To ensure optimal performance, avoid scheduling both update checks at the same time. For example, program file updates can be checked at 15 minutes past the hour, while signature files will be checked at 45 minutes past the hour.

The next step configures email reports. They do not need to be configured in order to conclude the Server setup wizard, but doing so is recommended. See chapter 6.2 for more information about configuring email reports. Even when not configuring email reports right away, this is the right time to enter email server settings and define recipient groups. The cogs icon leads to the **EMAIL SETTINGS** window, where an SMTP server can be defined. Enter a valid SMTP server and port (usually 25) and a sender email address. This email address will also be used as a reply-to address when submitting items to G DATA Security Labs. Under **MAIL GROUPS**, groups of recipients can be defined that will be later used for email reports and other functions. Groups like Administrators, Management or Technical Staff make sense: every entity that should be kept in the loop with notifications of significant server events or emergency notifications. Mail server and recipient group settings can be edited afterwards through the **EMAIL** tab of the **GENERAL SETTINGS** module.

The Server setup wizard features also settings for Android device management. Enter a password with which Android devices will have to authenticate with the ManagementServer. To be able to use emergency actions, you also have to enter the **SENDER ID** and **API KEY** (Server key) of your Firebase Cloud Messaging account (see chapter 11.1.6 for more information about configuring an account). The settings can be edited later by opening the **ANDROID** tab of the **GENERAL SETTINGS** module.

The last step of the Server setup wizard lets you configure access data for ActionCenter, which are required when using iOS Device Management (see chapter 11.2) or Network Monitoring (see chapter 16).

4.5.2. Additional configuration

The Server setup wizard concludes by initiating client installations (which will be discussed in chapter 4.8). However, there are some additional settings to be configured before deploying client software to the network. In the **GENERAL SETTINGS** module, the **SYNCHRONIZATION** tab offers vital options regarding client synchronization and updates. Under **CLIENTS**, configure the **MAIN SERVER SYNCHRONIZATION INTERVAL AND CHECKING FOR NEW UPDATES**. This value determines how often clients check back with the ManagementServer to see if

new updates or settings are available. The more clients that will be deployed, the higher the network load will be when planning regular synchronizations. An acceptable value is 5 minutes, which can be reduced if the network only features a small number of clients, and increased if the number of clients causes load spikes. The **SOFTWARE UPDATES** tab is used to enable staged distribution for client software updates. For networks with more than ten clients, staged distribution reduces the server and network load spike that can occur when client program file updates are available. In addition, it will let clients be grouped so that critical systems can be updated later, with the first stages acting as testing platforms. To avoid high server load in case of signature updates, peer-to-peer distribution can be enabled on the **SIGNATURE UPDATES** tab in the **UPDATES** module. This allows clients to serve as update servers to each other, distributing program file and signature updates. The peer-to-peer update distribution is managed completely by the main ManagementServer and will function without interaction, provided the appropriate client port has been configured (see chapter 4.4). Advanced settings can be altered by editing the appropriate configuration file (see chapter 18). See chapter 7.3.2 for more information about staged distribution and peer-to-peer distribution.

4.5.3. Default client security settings

Before commencing a network-wide client deployment, make sure that the default client security settings have been configured according to needs and policies. The **CLIENT SETTINGS** (see chapter 8) and **ANDROID SETTINGS** (see chapter 11) modules of G DATA Administrator can be used to configure security settings for all clients at once by selecting the main ManagementServer, or by selecting one by one the groups for which separate settings are required.

4.6. Server updates and registration

The Server setup wizard configures ManagementServer to regularly check for updates for client program files and virus signatures. Since server updates require a restart of the ManagementServer background service, however, they will always have to be carried out manually. If a program update for ManagementServer is available, G DATA Administrator will display a notification in the **OVERVIEW** area. Alternatively, the Internet Update tool can be used to check for updates manually. To check for updated program files, click **UPDATE PROGRAM FILES (SERVER)**. This will check the G DATA update servers for updated ManagementServer program files, and initiate the installation procedure if any updates are available.

G Data ManagementServer - Internet update [X]

You can use the Internet update to update the G Data software virus database and program files.

Enter the access data that you received during product registration. Click the "Online registration" button if you have not yet registered.

User name:

Password:

Region: ▼

To keep the data volume as small as possible, the Internet update will only be executed if a new version exists on the G Data server.
Disable the version check if files on your computer have been accidentally deleted or overwritten.

☒ Version check
☐ Offline update (files loaded from the directory)

Updates for virus signatures and program files (client) can be controlled via the G Data Administrator.
The Administrator can also distribute updates to clients.

Image 14: Internet Update

In addition to ManagementServer updates, Internet Update can also download client program file updates and updated virus signatures. This functionality is identical to that of G DATA Administrator, with one addition: updates can be loaded from a local folder, in case a server without internet access should be updated (see chapter 7.3.1).

In order to perform any updates, whether through Internet Update or through the automated processes of G DATA ManagementServer, user name and password need to be entered. Those data can be obtained by completing online registration, which is usually carried out during the installation of ManagementServer. The wizard will then automatically request a user name and password and save them. However, if the software is not registered at that time, online registration can be manually completed afterwards as well using the Internet Update tool.

Click ONLINE REGISTRATION to open the registration form. Fill out the form, and be sure to correctly enter the registration number. Clicking LOGIN will submit the data to G DATA and generate a user name and password. Be sure to make a note of the user name and password somewhere, as the registration number can only be used once. When ManagementServer is reinstalled, user name and password can be entered in the installation wizard to enable updates.

4.7. Server database backup and restore

As with all types of data, it is recommended that G DATA ManagementServer's database should be backed up regularly. In case of a hardware failure or other data storage issues, a recent backup should be available to quickly get ManagementServer up and running. Depending on the choice made during installation, the database is either stored locally as a SQL Server Express instance, or on a remote SQL Server installation. Using the GdmmsConfig.exe tool, a complete backup of the database can be made, regardless of where it's stored.

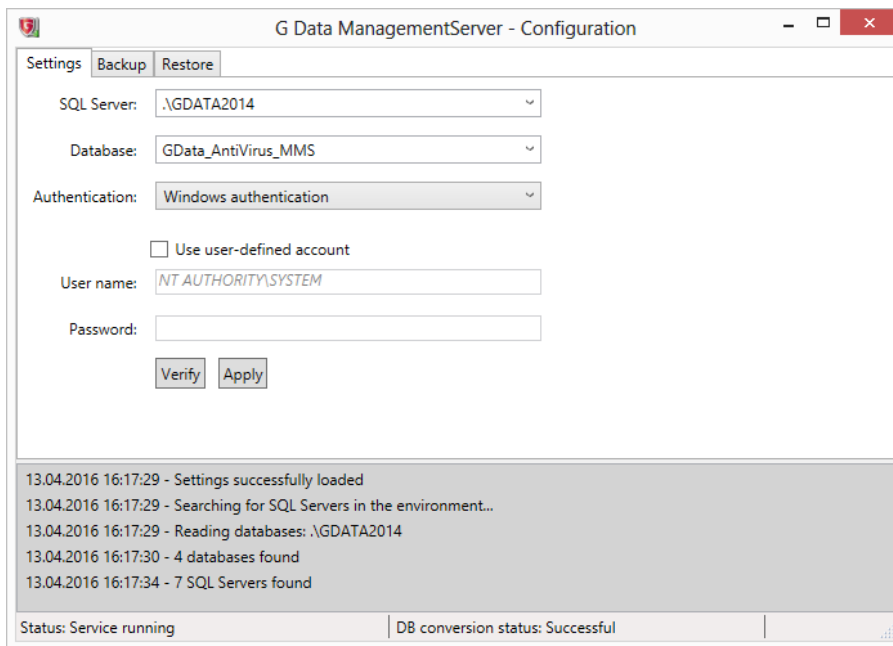


Image 15: GdmmsConfig.exe

GdmmsConfig.exe is located in the installation folder of G DATA ManagementServer, typically C:\Program Files (x86)\G Data\G DATA AntiVirus ManagementServer. Its interface displays several parameters related to the SQL server deployment. Click **VERIFY** to verify that the database can be opened successfully.

Database backups can be created and restored using the **BACKUP** and **RESTORE** tabs, respectively. Both actions require a folder to be selected. If a local database server was defined, a local folder can be used. If a remote SQL server instance was selected, the folder needs to be entered as a UNC path, for example: **\\Backupserver\C\$\Backups**. The account that is associated with the SQL Server service needs write permissions (when creating a backup) or read permissions (when restoring a backup) for the specific folder. Note that this account is not necessarily the one that has been configured on the **SETTINGS** tab, as that account is merely used by ManagementServer to access SQL Server.

Database backups can be automated by using GdmmsConfig.exe as a command line application. To make sure that the database is backed up regularly, a task can be added to the Windows Task Scheduler (Start, Run, **taskschd.msc**). A weekly task with the appropriate backup command makes sure that there is always a recent database backup to restore in case of emergency. As with all backup-related tasks, it should be verified that the configured task runs successfully and indeed generates a backup in the desired location. The parameters are as follows:

Parameter	Description
/dbfullbackup	Start a database backup.
/DBBackupFolder:<folder>	Optional. Target folder for the backup. <folder> should be an absolute path or a UNC path (when connecting to a remote SQL Server).
/ServerInstance:<sqlserver name>	Optional. The SQL Server instance which holds the database.
/Database:<database>	Optional. The database that should be backed up.
/Login:<username>	Optional. The username with which ManagementServer logs in to SQL Server.
/Password:<password>	Optional. The password with which ManagementServer logs in to SQL Server.

Most parameters are optional. If a backup folder has been previously chosen in the interface of GdmmsConfig, it will be used if the parameter is not set. Similarly, server instance, database name, username and password are taken from the existing configuration of GdmmsConfig. In any case, the command-line interface is subject to the same caveats as the backup version in the graphical interface: the account that is associated with the SQL Server service needs sufficient permissions to write to the backup folder. This is not necessarily the account that is entered with the /Login and /Password parameters.

If ManagementServer has been configured to use a local SQL Server Express instance, in most cases the command **gdmmsconfig.exe /dbfullbackup /DBBackupFolder:<folder>** will do, replacing **<folder>** with an absolute path to the backup folder. When all parameters are defined, the command looks as follows (with database GData_AntiVirus_MMS on instance GDATA2014, backup folder MMS on server BACKUPSRV, and user account SQLAdmin with password Password): **gdmmsconfig.exe /dbfullbackup /DBBackupFolder:\\BACKUPSRV\MMS /Login:SQLAdmin /Password:Password /Database:GData_AntiVirus_MMS /ServerInstance:GDATA2014.**

4.8. Client deployment

Which clients to include in the G DATA client deployment is up to the administrator. It is recommended to protect all machines in the company network, as already a single unprotected machine can provide an entry point for malware. All Windows, Mac, Linux, Android and iOS devices should be protected by G DATA; this includes clients as well as servers. Although not all G DATA security modules are as useful for servers (the client-oriented firewall, for example), G DATA Security Client's anti-malware modules, such as the file system monitor, provide excellent server protection as well. Note that, depending on the type of server, extra tests will need to be carried out. Stability and performance should be optimized. Several exceptions might have to be set for the file system monitor and scan jobs, such as regularly used database files on a database server, the email database of a mail server, or several types of log and management files on a domain controller.

4.8.1. Enabling Windows, Linux and Mac clients

Windows, Linux and Mac clients need to be added to G DATA Administrator's CLIENTS view ("enabled") before client software can be deployed to them. This allows administrators to keep an overview of network clients, even those to which software has not been deployed yet. G DATA Administrator's SERVER SETUP WIZARD provides a list of network clients that has been detected in the local network, which can be used to enable one or more clients with a single mouse click. If a client is not listed, it can be enabled by manually entering its name or IP address. If you enable one or more clients and select AUTOMATICALLY INSTALL CLIENT SOFTWARE ON THE ENABLED COMPUTERS, a remote client installation (see chapter 4.8.2.1) is triggered after completing the wizard. An alternative is using the CLIENTS view. Select the appropriate ManagementServer, click ENABLE CLIENT on the toolbar and enter the client names or IP addresses. In the following window, you can enter any number of clients to be enabled. The third option is the FIND COMPUTER(S) window, which is located in the ORGANIZATION menu. A complete IP range can be searched for active network clients, which can then be enabled directly. Finally, Active Directory synchronization can automatically enable Windows clients. Link a ManagementServer group to an Active Directory Organizational Unit to automatically import its clients into ManagementServer (see chapter 7.2).

4.8.2. Windows clients

After enabling one or more Windows clients, G DATA Security Client can be deployed. The preferred installation method is a remote installation. Alternatively, G DATA Security Client can be installed locally from an installation medium or using a client installation package.

4.8.2.1. Remote installation

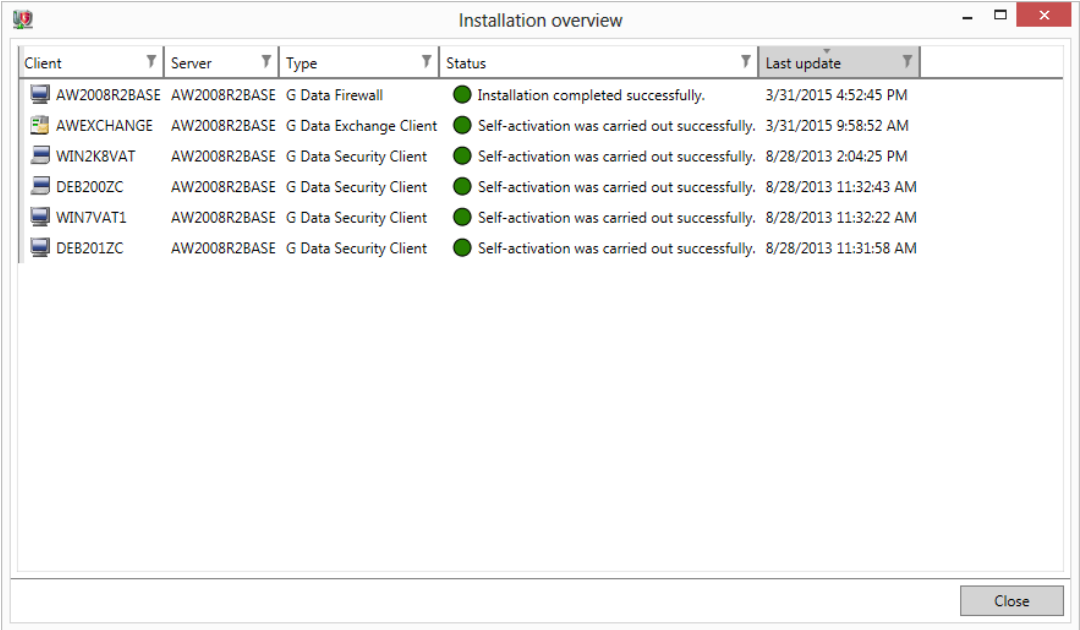
A remote installation of G DATA Security Client can be initiated by the SERVER SETUP WIZARD, by Active Directory synchronization (see chapter 7.2), or by selecting a client in the CLIENTS overview, right-clicking it and selecting INSTALL G DATA SECURITY CLIENT. A remote installation is the easiest way to install G DATA Security Client and saves time, because the administrator does not need physical access to the client. However, a few configuration changes might be necessary in order to deploy G DATA Security Client remotely:

- A user account with administrative permissions on the client must be entered. The account does not necessarily need to have a password. In that case, however, the target machine must be explicitly configured to allow network logons for accounts without a password. To do so, open the Group Policy Editor (START > RUN > **gpedit.msc**) and disable the option COMPUTER CONFIGURATION > WINDOWS SETTINGS > SECURITY SETTINGS > LOCAL POLICIES > SECURITY OPTIONS > ACCOUNTS: LIMIT LOCAL ACCOUNT USE OF BLANK PASSWORDS TO CONSOLE LOGIN ONLY. To remotely install a subnet server, an account password must be set: an empty password field is not permitted.
- Service Control Manager on the client must be remotely accessible using the specified user account.
- The specified user account must have write permissions for at least one network share on the client, such as C\$, Admin\$ or a custom share. Access can be enabled by opening the NETWORK AND SHARING CENTER and enabling FILE AND PRINTER SHARING under ADVANCED SHARING SETTINGS (Windows Vista and newer). On Windows XP, enable FILE AND PRINTER SHARING on the EXCEPTIONS tab of WINDOWS FIREWALL.
- When the client is not in a domain, additional settings must be configured:
 - SIMPLE FILE SHARING (Windows XP) or the USE SHARING WIZARD option (Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008 or newer) must be disabled. It is enabled by default in all Windows installations and can be disabled by opening any folder in Windows Explorer, clicking ORGANIZE > FOLDER AND SEARCH OPTIONS > VIEW, and unchecking the respective option.
 - When the client is using Windows Vista or newer: Open Registry Editor on the client and navigate to the key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Policies\System. Add a DWORD value named **LocalAccountTokenFilterPolicy** with value **1**. More information about this setting can be found on the Microsoft website⁶.

⁶ See [https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee844186\(v=ws.10\).aspx](https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee844186(v=ws.10).aspx).

When all requirements have been fulfilled, the remote installation(s) can be initiated. The language of the G DATA Security Client installation can be chosen from a dropdown menu. Note that this setting cannot be changed afterwards: the client will have to be reinstalled if the language should be changed.

To keep track of the progress of a remote installation, the **INSTALLATION OVERVIEW** window can be used. It opens automatically when a remote installation task is added, or can be opened by clicking the **INSTALLATION OVERVIEW** button in the **CLIENT** view's toolbar. It lists all clients that have pending and completed remote installation tasks. The **TYPE** column shows the type of installation (for example G DATA Security Client; G DATA Internet Security for Android; Subnet server). After a remote installation has been completed, the **STATUS** column will be updated. Clients that have been added through Active Directory synchronization (see chapter 7.2) will be scheduled for installation; the **NEXT INSTALLATION ATTEMPT** displays the scheduled installation date and time. Right-click an entry and click **SHOW INSTALLATION LOG** to display an installation log, which can be helpful when troubleshooting remote deployments.



Client	Server	Type	Status	Last update
AW2008R2BASE	AW2008R2BASE	G Data Firewall	● Installation completed successfully.	3/31/2015 4:52:45 PM
AWEXCHANGE	AW2008R2BASE	G Data Exchange Client	● Self-activation was carried out successfully.	3/31/2015 9:58:52 AM
WIN2K8VAT	AW2008R2BASE	G Data Security Client	● Self-activation was carried out successfully.	8/28/2013 2:04:25 PM
DEB200ZC	AW2008R2BASE	G Data Security Client	● Self-activation was carried out successfully.	8/28/2013 11:32:43 AM
WIN7VAT1	AW2008R2BASE	G Data Security Client	● Self-activation was carried out successfully.	8/28/2013 11:32:22 AM
DEB201ZC	AW2008R2BASE	G Data Security Client	● Self-activation was carried out successfully.	8/28/2013 11:31:58 AM

Image 16: G DATA Administrator, Installation overview

In some cases, the client will need to be rebooted in order to complete the installation. The installation procedure will add a report to the **SECURITY EVENTS** module if a reboot is required. If remote installation is not possible for any reason, the error will be displayed in the **STATUS** column. Further relevant error codes may be found in the client's registry (see chapter 4.8.2.4).

4.8.2.2. Local installation

G DATA Security Client can be installed locally on any client or server with a supported operating system. This is useful in scenarios where a network client is not in the same domain as the main ManagementServer, the system requirements for remote installation cannot be met, or the client does not regularly connect to the network (laptops). The G DATA installation medium contains an installer file, which can be run with local administrator rights on any client. The Security Client installer contains all available languages. The installation wizard is simple; all that is required is to enter the name of the main ManagementServer that the client should connect to. Optionally, enter a group name (see chapter 4.8.2.3

for more information about the syntax). After the installation has finished, the client will contact the ManagementServer within minutes. If a group name has been entered, it will automatically be added to the corresponding group. In order to prevent unauthorized access to the ManagementServer, locally installed clients must be authorized through the CLIENTS module before they are fully served.

4.8.2.3. Client installation package

If a remote deployment is not possible, but coordinating local installations for all clients would take too much time, the client installation package can be a practical solution. ManagementServer can create an executable which includes the latest version of the G DATA Security Client program files and virus signatures, as well as preconfigured settings to allow the client to automatically connect to the ManagementServer upon installation. The client installation package can be executed without user interaction and is an ideal solution to quickly deploy G DATA Security Client across a whole domain. Networks that make use of Active Directory can use startup scripts, so that the client retrieves the installation file upon login and executes it automatically in the background.

A client installation package can be created in G DATA Administrator. Open the menu ORGANIZATION and choose the option CREATE INSTALLATION PACKAGE FOR WINDOWS CLIENTS. Administrator will ask for the installation language and ManagementServer. Security Client will be installed in this language version and connect to the ManagementServer indicated here. The validity of the installation package can be limited, making sure that packages cannot be used forever (clients that were installed using an expired package will need to be manually authorized in G DATA Administrator).

If a group name is entered, the client will automatically be added to that group when it first connects to ManagementServer. If the group does not exist yet, it will be created automatically. Group names can be entered hierarchically. Use a slash "/" to separate group names in a hierarchy. Every quotation mark in group names must be duplicated. If a group name contains a "/", the group name itself must be enclosed in quotation marks. For example, to add a client to the group Workstations, which is a subgroup of Marketing, enter **Marketing/Workstations**. To add a client to a group called Locations 1/2/3, enter **"Locations 1/2/3"**. To add a client to a group called Location "A", enter **Location ""A""**.

Finally, a storage folder can be indicated. G DATA Administrator will create the package in the background. The process can take a few minutes; Administrator should not be closed during that time. The client installation package includes the latest version of Security Client as well as the latest virus signature updates. This ensures that the client will be optimally protected immediately, without having to separately download updates from the ManagementServer. This does mean, however, that a new client installation package should be created regularly if the deployment is to be carried out over a longer period of time.

To automate the creation of installation packages, you can use the GData.Business.Server.Cli.exe tool, which is located in the installation folder of G DATA ManagementServer. For example, create a nightly recurring task that starts the tool with the **--create-install-packages** parameter. A client package will automatically be saved to the folder which has been set using the option INSTALLPACKAGESFOLDER in config.xml (see chapter 18.3), which can then be distributed across the network.

Installation packages only have to be copied to the client(s) and run. This can be done manually or using a group policy. If G DATA Security Client has already been installed on the machine, it will be updated.

Due to its file size, it is not recommended to run the client installation package from a network share: installation may fail. If the installation should be carried out without user interaction, start the installation package with the parameter `/@_QuietInstallation="true"`. While Security Client is being installed, end users can continue making use of the client. The client should be restarted to ensure that all components are ready for use.

4.8.2.4. Troubleshooting

Whether the client is installed locally, remotely, or using a client installation package, complications can occur. Especially for remote installations it is difficult to directly spot installation errors. If a client does not connect to the ManagementServer after being deployed, there can be several reasons. Most importantly, the client should be able to establish a network connection with the ManagementServer, and vice versa (see chapter 4.9). If a network connection is available, but the client still is not connecting to the ManagementServer, the installation procedure for G DATA Security Client may have failed. The installation is logged locally (see chapter 18.6.1). When installing G DATA Security Client on Windows Server 2016, Windows Defender may not be disabled automatically. In that case, disable it manually before installing G DATA Security Client. To do so, use the Add Roles and Features Wizard, Powershell or group policies.

4.8.3. Linux/Mac clients

After enabling one or more Linux or Mac clients, G DATA Security Client for Linux and G DATA Security Client for Mac can be deployed. The preferred installation method is a remote installation. Alternatively, they can be installed locally using an installation script.

4.8.3.1. Remote installation

In order to allow remote installation, the Linux/Mac client needs to have an SSH server installed and running. It needs to be configured to allow password-based authentication and root logins. These are usually the default settings, but if necessary they can be enabled manually. Open the SSH daemon configuration file (typically `/etc/ssh/sshd_config`) and set `PermitRootLogin` and `PasswordAuthentication` to yes. Finally, DNS name resolution must be functioning for both the ManagementServer and the client.

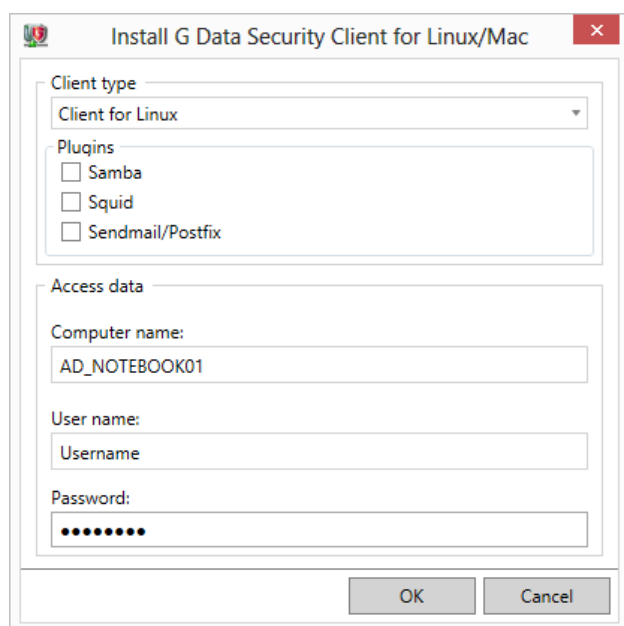


Image 17: G DATA Administrator, Install G DATA Security Client for Linux/Mac

To carry out a remote installation using G DATA Administrator, select any Linux or Mac client in the **CLIENTS** module. From the menu **CLIENTS**, choose the option **INSTALL G DATA SECURITY CLIENT FOR LINUX/MAC**. Select the appropriate client type. If the Linux version is being deployed, additional security modules can be optionally enabled (see chapter 4.8.3.3). Enter the **USER NAME** and **PASSWORD** for an account with root permissions. Click **OK** to initiate the remote installation. The **INSTALLATION OVERVIEW** window will show the installation's progress.

4.8.3.2. Local installation

Start G DATA Administrator, select the **CLIENTS** panel and choose the option **CREATE INSTALLATION SCRIPT FOR LINUX/MAC CLIENTS** from the **ORGANIZATION** menu. After you choose a storage location, the script will be created in the background. Alternatively, the creation of the installation script can be automated. To do so, create a recurring task for the `GData.Business.Server.Cli.exe` tool, which is located in the installation folder of G DATA ManagementServer. Start the tool with the **--create-install-packages** parameter to automatically save an installation script to the folder which has been set using the option `INSTALLSCRIPTSFOLDER` in `config.xml` (see chapter 18.3).

Copy the installation script to the client, then add the permission to execute the script (command-line: **chmod +x install-client.sh**). Open a Terminal window and elevate the user status by typing **su** and entering the root password. Alternatively, execute the installation command using **sudo**. Navigate to the folder to which you copied the file and execute it: **./install-client.sh -t <product[,product]>**. The product parameter should be **WS** when installing G DATA Security Client for Mac. For the Linux version, it can be one or more of the following values:

Parameter	Value	Description
-t	ALL	G DATA Security Client for Linux and all additional modules.
	WS	G DATA Security Client for Linux.
	SMB	Samba module.

AMAVIS	Linux Mail Security Gateway (Sendmail/Postfix) module.
WEB	Linux Web Security Gateway (Squid) module.

In order to prevent unauthorized access to the ManagementServer, locally installed clients must be authorized through the `CLIENTS` module before they are fully served.

4.8.3.3. Additional modules

G DATA Security Client for Linux contains additional modules that provide security to multiple Linux components. If you select additional modules during the remote or local installation, the modules are automatically installed. However, some modules need additional configuration before or after the installation.

When installing any of the additional modules on CentOS, Fedora, OpenSUSE, Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SUSE Linux Enterprise Server, the installer will automatically deploy configuration policy files for SELinux. After the installation, the *.te policy files can be found in the folder `/etc/gdata/selinux`.

Samba

The Samba plugin carries out a file scan on every access to Samba shares, preventing the spread of malware from Windows to Linux and vice versa. After the remote or local installation has been completed, Samba protection can be enabled by adding the line **vfs objects = gdvfs** to the Samba configuration file (typically `/etc/samba/smb.conf`). To protect all shares, add it to the section **[global]**. If the line is in another section, the protection only applies to the corresponding share. After saving the configuration file, restart the Samba service.

Linux Mail Security Gateway

The Linux Mail Security Gateway module is available as an optional module.

The Linux Mail Security Gateway module has been developed as a plugin for the Amavis framework. It requires Amavis 2.8.0 or higher and altermime. If Amavis is not available on the system, it will be automatically installed while installing the Linux Mail Security Gateway (Sendmail/Postfix) module. The following configuration steps are required:

1. The Linux Mail Security Gateway module requires an operational Sendmail/Postfix mail server.
2. Make sure that the mail server forwards email messages to Amavis. More information can be found in the documentation of Amavis or the relevant mail server.
3. Make sure that spam and virus checks have been enabled in the Amavis configuration. More information can be found in Amavis documentation.
4. Edit the configuration file `/etc/gdata/amavis/mms.cfg` and make sure that the mail server (sub)domain name has been entered under `localDomains` (e.g. `mail.domain.com`).

Using an existing Amavis installation is not recommended, because that requires a large number of changes to configuration files directly after installing the Linux Mail Security Gateway module. When using an Amavis version older than 2.10.0, not all functions of the module are available. Update Amavis to version 2.10.0 or higher before deploying the module to ensure full functionality.

Once enabled, the Linux Mail Security Gateway module will automatically check email traffic and report viruses to G DATA ManagementServer. Its settings can be managed through G DATA Administrator in the SENDMAIL/POSTFIX module (see chapter 17.2).

Linux Web Security Gateway

The Linux Web Security Gateway module is available as an optional module.

If you select the Linux Web Security Gateway (Squid) module, the installation of G DATA Security Client for Linux automatically installs and configures Squid itself. If Squid is already present on the system, the existing version will be uninstalled beforehand. The Squid server installation will use the package that is available in the respective distribution's repository. If that Squid version is older than 3.3.8, HTTPS scans will not be available.

After the installation, the host name or IP address of the Squid server should be configured as proxy server on all systems for which traffic should be filtered by Squid (port 3128). To enable HTTPS traffic scans, additionally configure an HTTPS proxy with the Squid host name or IP address and port 6789. The required certificates are located in the /etc/gdata/ssl folder on the Squid server and should be imported on all clients. If you are using your own SSL certificates, they must be saved on the server in the folder /etc/gdata/ssl.

Once enabled, the Linux Web Security Gateway module will automatically check traffic against a black- and whitelist and report viruses to G DATA ManagementServer. Its settings can be managed through G DATA Administrator in the SQUID module (see chapter 8.5).

4.8.3.4. Troubleshooting

When installing G DATA Security Client for Mac on Mac OS X 10.7, remote upgrade installations may fail if G DATA Security Client was already present on the client. In that case, a local upgrade should be carried out.

4.8.4. Android clients

Android client installations can be initiated from G DATA Administrator. Before starting the deployment, enter a password under GENERAL SETTINGS > ANDROID > AUTHENTICATION FOR ANDROID CLIENTS. The deployment process is carried out via email. In the CLIENTS view, select an Android client or a group and click the toolbar button SEND INSTALLATION LINK TO MOBILE CLIENTS. A list of email addresses can be entered: an activation email can be sent to any email address. When opened on the client, a link to download the Internet Security for Android installation file from the ManagementServer will be included. Tap the download link to download the installer APK file. Note that the option UNKNOWN SOURCES (ALLOW INSTALLATION OF NON-MARKET APPS) needs to be enabled in order to install APK files. This option is usually found in Android's system menu SETTINGS > SECURITY > DEVICE ADMINISTRATION. After opening the APK file and confirming its requested permissions, G DATA Internet Security for Android will be installed and can be started from the Android app menu.

To enable remote management, open the second link contained in the installation email. G DATA Internet Security for Android will automatically be configured with the correct server data. Alternatively,

remote management can be configured manually. Tap the Settings icon in the top right corner of the screen, tick the checkbox `ALLOW REMOTE ADMINISTRATION` and enter the name or IP address of the ManagementServer under `SERVER ADDRESS`. Under `DEVICE NAME` you can enter a name that will be used to identify the device in G DATA Administrator. `PASSWORD` should contain the password that you entered in G DATA Administrator (which is also listed in the installation email). The device will be listed among the other clients in G DATA Administrator's `CLIENTS` module and can be managed from there. If it does not appear automatically, reboot the device to force it to check in with the ManagementServer.

4.8.5. iOS clients

iOS client deployments can be initiated from G DATA Administrator. Because communication with iOS devices is managed by G DATA ActionCenter, you need to register a free account at <https://ac.gdata.de> and enter your account details in G DATA Administrator in the `ACTIONCENTER` module. In addition, a valid G DATA license is required. Make sure that your Internet update user name and password have been entered under `UPDATES > ACCESS DATA AND SETTINGS`.

The deployment process is carried out via email. In the `CLIENTS` view, select any node under `iOS MOBILE DEVICE MANAGEMENT` and click the toolbar button `SEND INSTALLATION LINK TO MOBILE CLIENTS`. As with Android client deployment, you can enter a list of email addresses. In addition, some parameters can be entered that will be displayed on the iOS device when the end user reviews the MDM request. `NAME`, `DESCRIPTION` and `ORGANIZATION` will be displayed in the MDM request as well as afterwards in the list of iOS MDM profiles. The `END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT` can be used to inform the end user of the fact that the device will be remotely managed. When the end user opens the link from the installation email on an iOS device, the device immediately shows up in G DATA Administrator (with the `SECURITY STATUS` on the `CLIENTS` tab detailing its pending status). As soon as the end user accepts the MDM request, the iOS device can be fully managed through G DATA Administrator.

4.9. Finalizing deployment

After completing the deployment of both server(s) and clients, it is important to verify that all processes are running correctly and that all security measures are in place. Most importantly, all clients should be able to connect to the ManagementServer. By default, each Windows, Mac and Linux client reports its status to ManagementServer every five minutes (except during a scheduled scan). The `CLIENTS` module of G DATA Administrator will help locate and troubleshoot connection problems. Firstly, check if all network clients are listed in the `CLIENTS` view. If a client is missing, it may not have been deployed correctly. Depending on the method of client deployment, try to add the client manually and enable it, or check the network's Domain Controller to see if the client has been added to Active Directory. If the client is listed, use the `LAST ACCESS` column to find out when the client last connected to the ManagementServer. Make sure that the client is connected to the network and turned on. TCP traffic must be allowed through the relevant ports, both on the client (7169) and the server (7161). Finally, the client must be able to resolve the IP address of the server. To test the connection, use the **telnet** command on the client to connect to the server: **telnet <ManagementServer IP> <ManagementServer port>**. If the client can connect to the server, an array of cryptic characters will be displayed on the prompt. If there is no connection, an empty input window appears. See chapter 7 for more information about the `CLIENTS` module and client management.

With all clients regularly connecting to ManagementServer and protected by the default network settings, the core deployment has been finished. However, there are more services to configure. To allow for quick configuration changes, configure the G DATA solution for remote administration (see chapter 5). Customize real time protection settings for each client as appropriate (see chapter 8). Recurring tasks can be scheduled to perform malware scans (see chapter 9) and backups (see chapter 12). If the deployment scenario includes the Firewall component of the G DATA solution, make sure to configure and customize its settings (see chapter 13). Most settings can be configured using G DATA Administrator, but some advanced settings can be accessed by editing configuration files or using specialized G DATA configuration tools (see chapter 18).

4.10. Subnet server(s)

If performance is not as expected after deploying the main ManagementServer and its clients, a connection limit or task reconfiguration could reduce server load (see chapter 7.57.4). An effective alternative, however, is the installation of one or more subnet servers. A subnet server supports the main ManagementServer. Clients can be allocated to a subnet server and will connect to that server to obtain virus signatures, reducing the server load on the main ManagementServer and the network traffic between the clients and the main ManagementServer. Especially for local branch offices, running a subnet server is recommended: to keep server-client traffic at optimal speeds, the dependency on contact to a main ManagementServer over a WAN can be eliminated.

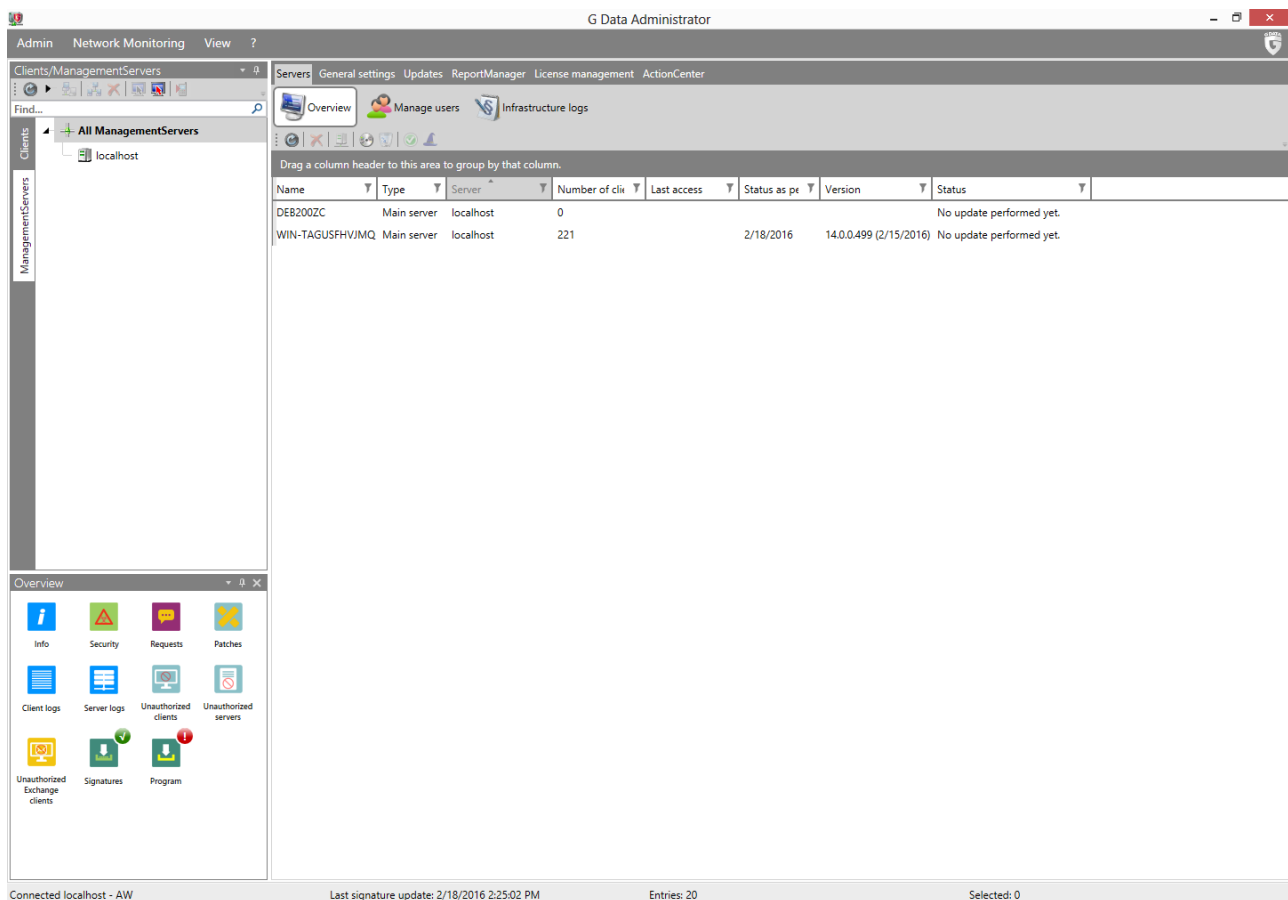


Image 18: G DATA Administrator, Servers, Overview

Any machine in the network that meets the system requirements can be configured as a subnet server. The recommended way is to install it remotely through G DATA Administrator. Using the option `INSTALL SUBNET SERVER` under `SERVICES > OVERVIEW`, any computer in the network can be selected. After entering login details for an administrator account with permissions for that computer, a remote installation will be initialized. The `INSTALLATION OVERVIEW` window can be used to track the installation status. A remote installation requires the prospective subnet server to be configured the same way a client needs to be configured for a remote installation. See chapter 4.8.2.1 for more information about the prerequisites. On Windows Server 2003/2008 and Windows Vista, subnet servers cannot be installed remotely, because Microsoft SQL Server 2014 Express does not support those operating systems. On such systems, subnet servers can be installed through a local installation of G DATA ManagementServer, after manually installing Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Express (see chapter 4.2.1).

If a remote installation is not an option, subnet servers can be installed locally using the G DATA installation medium. The installation procedure is identical to the procedure for a main ManagementServer (see chapter 4.2.1). As a server type, select `SUBNET SERVER` and enter the computer name of the main ManagementServer to allow the subnet server to contact the correct main server. After the installation is completed, the subnet server will connect to the main ManagementServer. To prevent rogue subnet servers from being installed in the network and receiving data from the ManagementServer without authorization, each locally installed subnet server needs to be manually authorized. Select the newly added subnet server under `SERVICES > OVERVIEW` and click `GRANT AUTHORIZATION` to allow ManagementServer to synchronize its database to the subnet server.

After the subnet server has been installed, click `ASSIGN CLIENTS` to move clients from the main ManagementServer to the newly installed subnet server.

5. Remote administration

Sometimes, configuration changes need to be carried out unexpectedly. It can be necessary to gain access to G DATA ManagementServer's configuration from a machine without configuration tool G DATA Administrator, or while on the road. G DATA offers full configuration possibilities through the browser, as well as a selection of the most-used options for mobile devices (such as smartphones and tablets).

During the installation of G DATA ManagementServer, the configuration tool G DATA Administrator will be installed on the same machine. G DATA ManagementServer can then be configured by physically using the server machine or by logging in to it using Windows' Remote Desktop Protocol, or any third-party remote control solution. Additionally, G DATA Administrator can be run from other machines without the need to open a session on the server, by installing it on any machine with network access to the server.

As an optional part of the deployment process, the configuration capabilities of the G DATA solution can be made remotely accessible. G DATA Administrator can be installed and configured to be accessed from outside the network, but if installing the Administrator software is not an option, G DATA WebAdministrator offers a browser-based interface that provides access to all settings and modules. For mobile users, G DATA MobileAdministrator is the perfect interface, offering the most commonly executed tasks, such as client and security management, and checking reports.

5.1. Desktop application

The default deployment of G DATA ManagementServer installs G DATA Administrator on the same machine. With physical or remote desktop access to the server, administrators can log in to G DATA Administrator to get access to all modules. In cases where desktop application access to the server is not possible or not practical, G DATA Administrator can be installed on any other Windows client, as long as it can reach the ManagementServer.

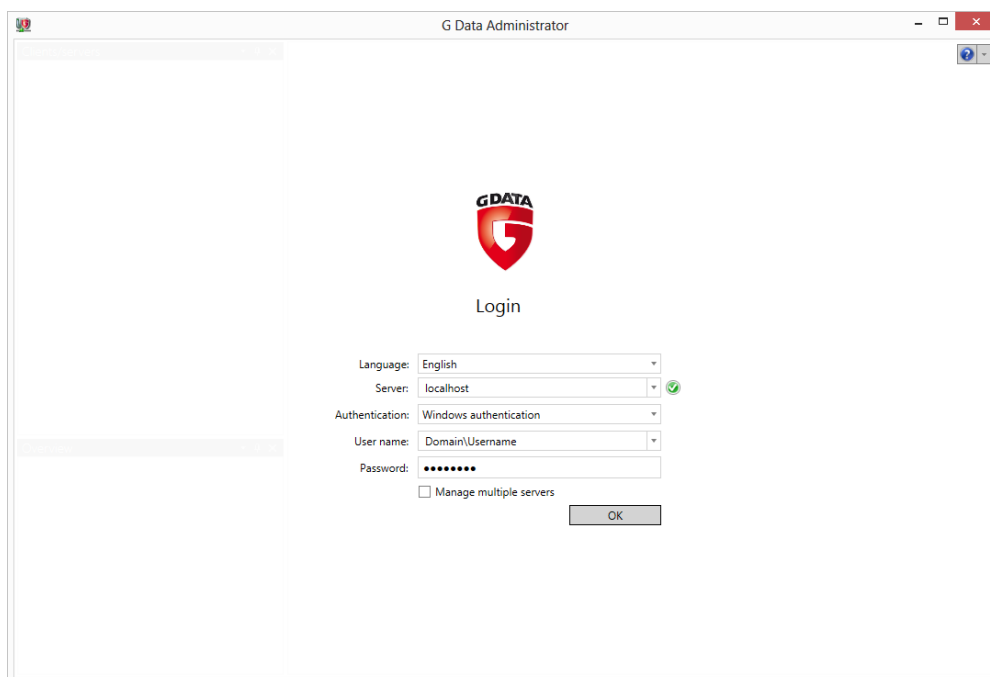


Image 19: G DATA Administrator, Login

Use the G DATA installation medium to install G DATA Administrator on the PC from which configuration tasks will be carried out. When logging in, enter the IP address or (if resolvable) the name of the ManagementServer machine as SERVER address. Make sure that the server port is not being blocked by the firewall, and forward it on router level if necessary.

5.2. Browser

Taking the time to install G DATA Administrator on a machine is not always an option. Local policies can prevent software from being installed, or an urgent issue requires immediate attention and leaves no time for a software installation. In these cases, it is very practical to be able to configure G DATA ManagementServer using only a browser. The web-based module G DATA WebAdministrator offers this possibility. Most commonly, WebAdministrator is deployed to an existing web server in the enterprise network, but it can be installed to any Windows machine that is running Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS). The following versions of IIS are supported, with their respective operating systems:

<i>IIS version</i>	<i>Operating system</i>
5.1	Windows XP Professional
6.0	Windows Server 2003
7.0	Windows Server 2008, Windows Vista
7.5	Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7
8.0	Windows Server 2012, Windows 8
8.5	Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows 8.1
10	Windows Server 2016, Windows 10

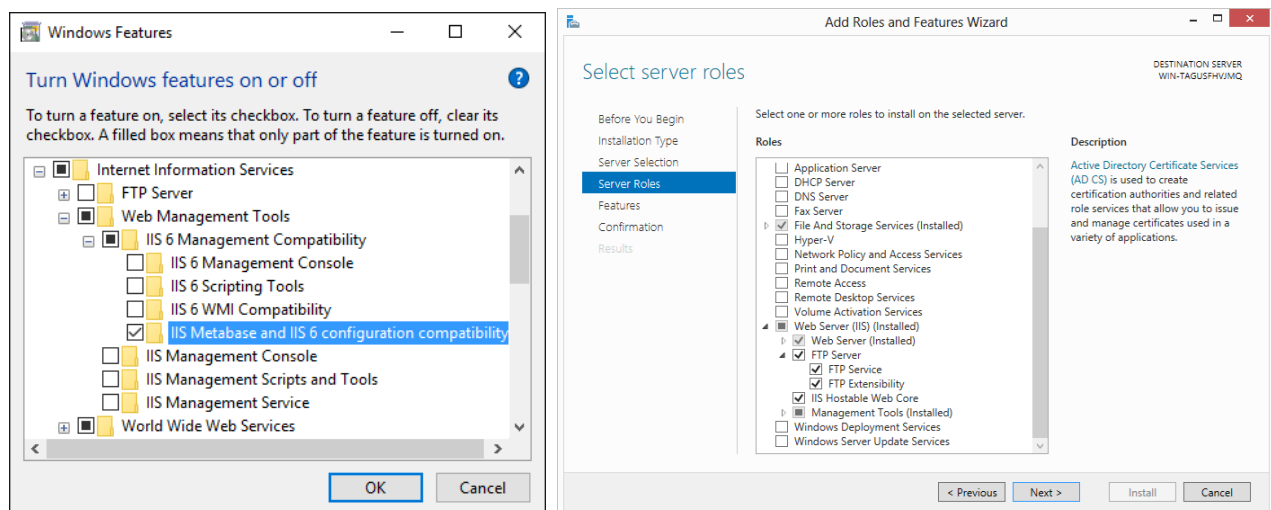


Image 20; 21: Windows 10, Windows Features; Windows Server 2012, Add Roles and Features Wizard

Microsoft IIS needs to be installed before WebAdministrator can be deployed. Each Windows version listed above includes the IIS component, but often it needs to be enabled manually. For Windows Vista and newer, open the WINDOWS FEATURES panel (found under CONTROL PANEL > PROGRAMS AND FEATURES). Select INTERNET INFORMATION SERVICES to install the complete web server package, or pick individual components. Also enable IIS 6 MANAGEMENT COMPATIBILITY > IIS METABASE AND IIS 6 CONFIGURATION COMPATIBILITY, as

WebAdministrator depends on it, as well as .NET Framework 3.5 and 4.5 and their respective HTTP ACTIVATION feature (for Windows 8/Windows Server 2012 and newer). Click OK to install IIS and restart the machine if prompted to do so.

Using Windows Server 2003, start the Manage Your Server application from the Start menu. In Windows Server 2008 and newer, this function has been renamed Server Manager. Both applications feature the possibility to add Roles to the current server configuration. In Windows Server 2003, the appropriate role is called APPLICATION SERVER (IIS, ASP.NET); in Windows Server 2008 and newer, WEB SERVER (IIS). For the latter two, IIS 6 METABASE COMPATIBILITY needs to be selected on the ROLE SERVICES panel. After installing the web server role (and possibly restarting the server), verify that the web server is accessible by opening **http://localhost** in the local browser.

As with any website, accessing G DATA WebAdministrator through the browser can expose HTTP traffic to attackers with network access. Especially in scenarios where G DATA WebAdministrator will be accessed from outside the enterprise network, securing the traffic is recommended. This can be done using an SSL certificate. Certificates are available for purchase from Certificate Authorities (CAs) or can be generated locally for free and be self-signed. The former option is recommended for cases where WebAdministrator will be accessed from outside the enterprise network, but will incur additional costs if the enterprise does not already own one or more certificates. The latter option can be configured easily, and will protect against casual eavesdropping on the HTTP traffic, but is more vulnerable to a man-in-the-middle attack.

Using Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003, an SSL certificate can be added by using the free Microsoft tool SelfSSL, available from the Microsoft website as part of the IIS 6.0 Resource Kit Tools⁷. After installation, open the SelfSSL command prompt through Start > Programs > IIS Resources > SelfSSL. A self-signed certificate can be assigned to the local website by entering a single command: **selfssl /N:CN=localhost /K:2048 /V:365 /S:1 /T**. Confirm the certificate creation by pressing **Y**. This will create a certificate for the default IIS site on the local server, and add **localhost** to the list of trusted certificates. The key length will be 2048 and the certificate will be valid for 365 days. If the site is not the default site of IIS, look up its IDENTIFIER in Start > Administrative Tools > Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager and change the parameter **/S:1** accordingly.

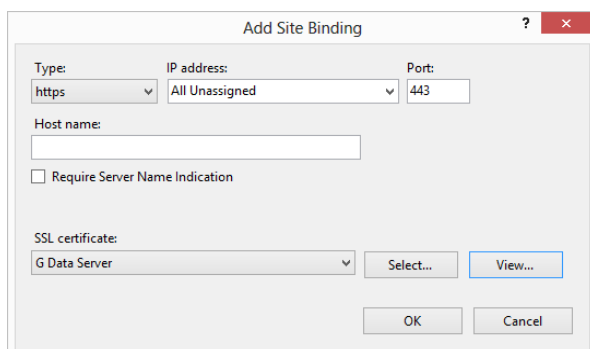


Image 22: Internet Information Service (IIS) Manager, Add Site Binding

Using Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008 and higher, open Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager by clicking Start > Run (or, alternatively, by holding Windows-key + R) and entering the command **inetmgr**. Select the local web server in the Connections panel. In the middle of the screen, navigate to

⁷ See www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=17275.

the IIS category and double click on SERVER CERTIFICATES. On the ACTIONS panel, click CREATE SELF-SIGNED CERTIFICATE. After entering a proper name for the certificate, it will be created and listed in the SERVER CERTIFICATES panel. Note that the default expiration date of the certificate is exactly one year ahead of the date of creation. To apply the certificate to site communication, select the appropriate site in the CONNECTIONS panel. On the ACTIONS panel on the right, choose BINDINGS. Click Add to add a new binding. Select **https** as type and select the new certificate in the SSL CERTIFICATE dropdown. Click OK to add the binding.

With IIS configured, G DATA WebAdministrator can now be installed. Use the setup wizard on the G DATA installation medium to install WebAdministrator. Microsoft .NET Framework will automatically be installed if the server does not yet have the required version. After installation, WebAdministrator will be accessible in the browser by opening the subfolder /GDAdmin, such as **https://10.0.2.150/GDAdmin** (or **http://** if no SSL certificate has been installed on the web server). The folder will be different if the installation folder has been altered. Because of the self-signed certificate, browsers may issue a warning before opening WebAdministrator. The communication, however, will still be fully encrypted. If the Silverlight browser plugin has not yet been installed, the user will be prompted to do so upon the first visit.

G DATA WebAdministrator can be used to log in to any ManagementServer. Its login authentication methods, interface and functions are identical to those of G DATA Administrator. Any configuration and management tasks can be carried out through the web interface.

5.3. Mobile

For configuration tasks that need to be carried out right away, G DATA Administrator and G DATA WebAdministrator are not always the perfect solution. For cases where no software or desktop browser access is possible, G DATA has developed MobileAdministrator. It offers access to the most commonly used functions of G DATA Administrator in a mobile-optimized web interface. MobileAdministrator can be used on all smartphone platforms and on all tablets and does not require the Silverlight plugin, unlike WebAdministrator.

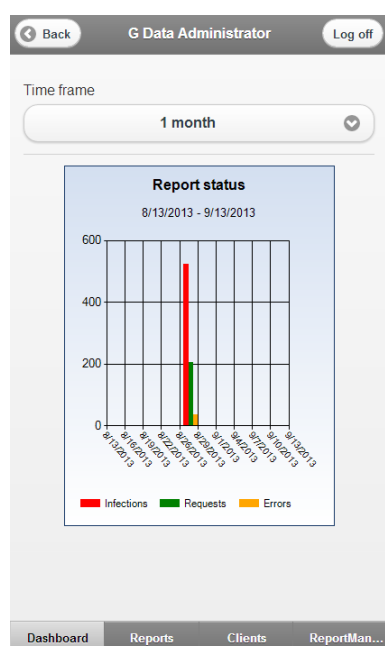


Image 23: G DATA MobileAdministrator, Dashboard

The web application can be used to manage clients and to stay up to date with the latest reports about malware infections, PolicyManager requests and more. It offers effective client management and reports. The web application does not just provide passive reporting capabilities, but supports direct responses. Malware infections can be checked and directly acted upon. Files can be quarantined or moved back and PolicyManager reports used to directly edit white- or blacklists. The web application can also be used to quickly gain an overview of the status of all network clients. Reports can be defined and previewed using the mobile ReportManager module.

MobileAdministrator is, like WebAdministrator, a web application. It can be installed from the G DATA installation medium, on top of Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS). MobileAdministrator requires at least Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For more information about configuring IIS, including an SSL certificate, see chapter 5.2.

5.4. MasterAdmin

Although G DATA Administrator, WebAdministrator and MobileAdministrator can be used to log in to any ManagementServer, effective management of very large networks should be carried out with MasterAdmin. This version of G DATA Administrator allows management of multiple ManagementServers within the same interface, streamlining configuration and deployment. To manage multiple servers, MasterAdmin functionality can be enabled in G DATA Administrator. Managed Service partners, as well as end customers who are managing a large network with multiple ManagementServer installations, can request a MasterAdmin activation code from G DATA. On the regular login screen, select **MANAGE MULTIPLE SERVERS** to enable the appropriate login options. Enter the activation code and a username and password of choice. After successfully logging in, the **MASTERADMIN WIZARD** will be started automatically. Using the wizard, the management servers that will be administered remotely can be added. Enter the server's domain name or IP address and its user name and password. To tell multiple servers apart in the MasterAdmin interface, enter an alias name. Click **NEXT** to add a new server or **FINISH** to close the wizard. The MasterAdmin wizard can be opened at any time from the **ADMIN** menu.

After adding servers, MasterAdmin's options are virtually indistinguishable from G DATA Administrator's regular functionality. Each ManagementServer and its clients can be managed by selecting it in the **CLIENTS** view. Depending on the selected server's license, the appropriate modules will be shown on the right.

Section B: Using G DATA business solutions

6. Dashboard and monitoring

After successfully finishing the deployment of G DATA business solutions across the network, all clients will be continuously protected. However, each client's security status needs to be checked regularly. For various reasons, protection may be interrupted. Network problems or a lack of disk space can prevent updates from being distributed. Program or driver updates may interfere with a protection module or performance may be impacted. At any rate, running a security solution deployment is not a self-sufficient process. Ensure that all relevant information can be accessed efficiently and that administrators are notified of possible service interruptions.

G DATA security solutions offer several notification possibilities. The most important information is shown in the **OVERVIEW** panel of G DATA Administrator. It displays an at-a-glance overview of unread reports, logs and other status information. Clicking the icons offers quick access to the respective modules with pre-configured filter settings to display only the requested data. Further statistics can be found in the **DASHBOARD** module. It provides charts with information about infections, client connections and more. Common tasks can be carried out directly, such as updating virus signatures or enabling the firewall. A more comprehensive overview of client statuses can be found on the **OVERVIEW** tab of the **CLIENTS** module, including a **SECURITY STATUS** column which immediately shows if individual clients need attention. Statistics can be found in the dedicated **STATISTICS** module. Additionally, clients generate reports about malware infections, corrupted files, and more. Reports can be accessed through the **SECURITY EVENTS** module, where direct action can be taken for some types of messages. Finally, the **REPORTMANAGER** module allows administrators to compile their own reports from several modules and have the results emailed regularly.

As a general recommendation, administrators should try to set up a balanced notification system. By combining statistical information, email notifications and ReportManager reports, a good overview can be obtained. Beware of information overload: by having the software report more than necessary, important notifications can slip by unnoticed.

6.1. Overview, Dashboard and Statistics

By default, G DATA Administrator displays the **OVERVIEW** panel in the bottom left corner. Depending on which solution has been deployed, it displays shortcut icons and status information for information such as reports, logs, updates and unauthorized clients. If there are unread reports or logs, a status indicator shows the number of unread items. Clicking an icon leads directly to the relevant module or view with the appropriate filters enabled, allowing quick access to the most essential information.

The **DASHBOARD** view allows the administrator to get an overview at a glance of the key statistics, offering more detail than the **OVERVIEW** panel. Its charts are a very valuable tool to spot anomalies in the network client protection status. The **G DATA SECURITY STATUS** column offers an indispensable overview in numbers. If one of the managed systems does not have G DATA Security Client running, the column will show the affected client. Similarly, clients with outdated virus signatures will be listed, allowing administrators to update them immediately. If any critical security components are disabled, they can be enabled directly.

For machines where G DATA Security Client has been installed, the CLIENT CONNECTIONS overview shows the last connection. By keeping an eye on the CLIENT CONNECTIONS chart, administrators can check when machines have last connected to the ManagementServer and spot potential server or network problems. Machines that do not connect to the ManagementServer regularly do not receive virus signature updates and will not be able to synchronize tasks and other settings. Some types of machines, such as laptops for external personnel, may be without access while on the road for longer periods of times. Regular desktop clients, on the other hand, can typically connect to the ManagementServer more often, and if a considerable number of clients has not been able to connect for more than 3 or 7 days, server or network problems may be occurring. If a machine is connected to the network and turned on and still does not connect to ManagementServer, the connection between client and ManagementServer should be investigated (see chapter 4.9), as well as network-level protection and port configuration (see chapter 4.4).

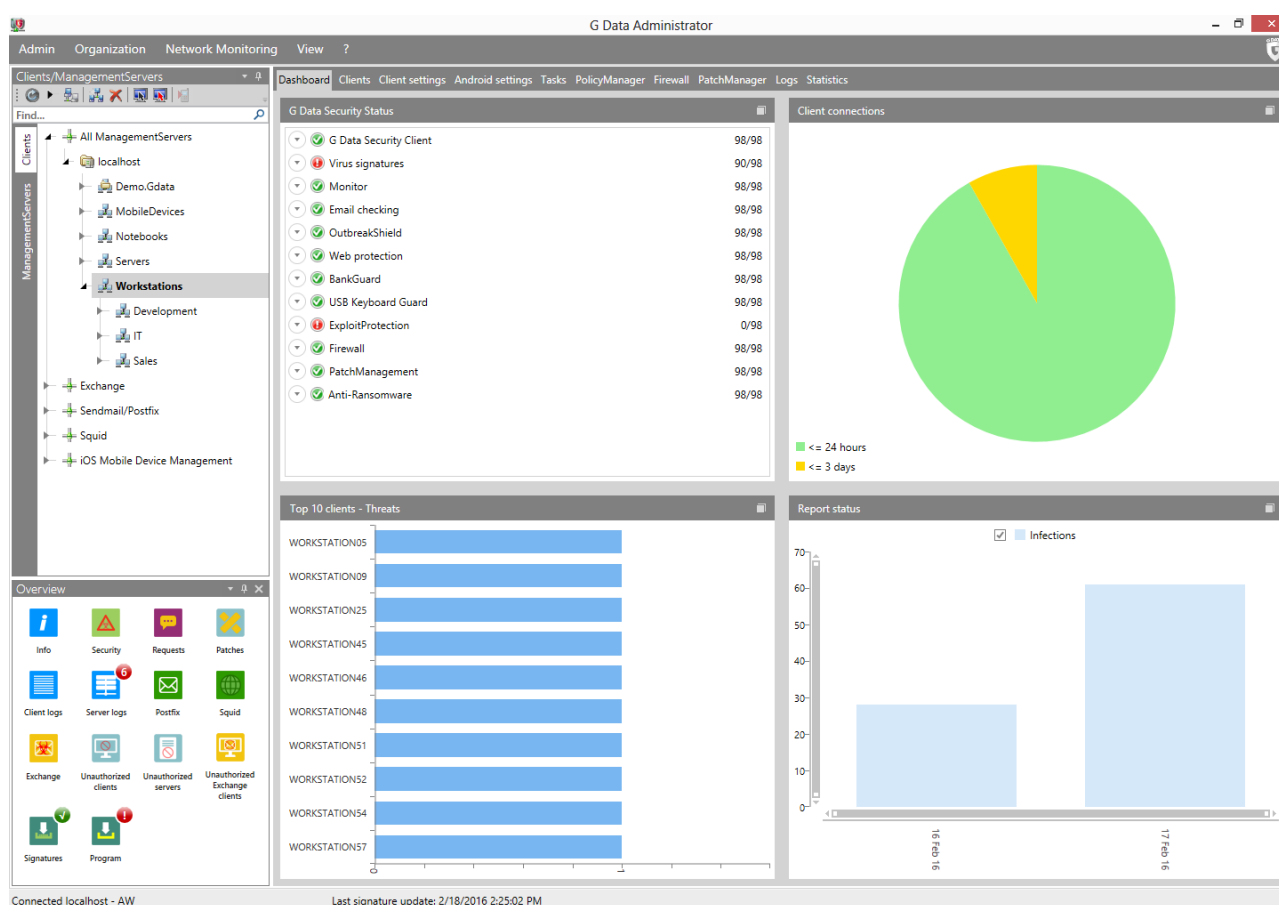


Image 24: G DATA Administrator, Dashboard

The TOP 10 CLIENTS – THREATS overview helps located problematic clients. The pie chart shows the clients which produced the most virus reports. While G DATA successfully neutralizes these infections, the fact that particular clients are often hit by malware attacks can indicate problems. One of the other protection mechanisms may be configured incorrectly, or the end user may be particularly liable to be attacked, either because of a targeted malware attack, or because of careless (browsing) habits. Checking the security configuration for that client is recommended. If end user (mis)behavior is a likely cause, setting PolicyManager policies can help restrict access to dubious resources (see chapter 14). By default, the pie chart shows neutralized infections from the last two weeks only. By clicking on the

calendar icon in the top right corner, the period can be configured to cover the last few days, weeks or months, or a manually defined period.

REPORT STATUS shows an overview of reports (accessible through the SECURITY EVENTS module). Infections, errors and Firewall and PolicyManager requests are laid out in a chart. Excessive errors from one of the modules or other notable spikes in the chart can be researched by opening the SECURITY EVENTS module and investigating the individual reports. Like the TOP 10 CLIENTS - THREATS chart, REPORT STATUS can be configured to show information for only a certain period of time.

In addition to the DASHBOARD, more extensive information can be gathered from the STATISTICS tab. On different panels it provides an overview of the protection status of the network. The CLIENTS panel displays the number of clients that have monitor, OutbreakShield and email protection enabled, as well as the current status of engine and settings, and more. The CLIENTS panel can be configured to display up to eight types of statistical information, either as table (text), bar chart or pie chart. DETECTION METHOD displays the components that detected malware, information that can help in determining malware attack vectors, as well as identifying underperforming or misconfigured protection components. The VIRUS HIT LIST panel identifies the malware that has been detected most often, information that can also assist in analyzing attacks. Finally, the HIT LIST OF NEUTRALIZED INFECTIONS shows the clients that have most often been targeted by malware. When one or more clients stand out, further inspection and active protection might be necessary, either because of a (semi-)targeted attack, or because of carelessness on the side of the end user. Using the PRINT function, statistics can be printed, for example to be used in external reports.

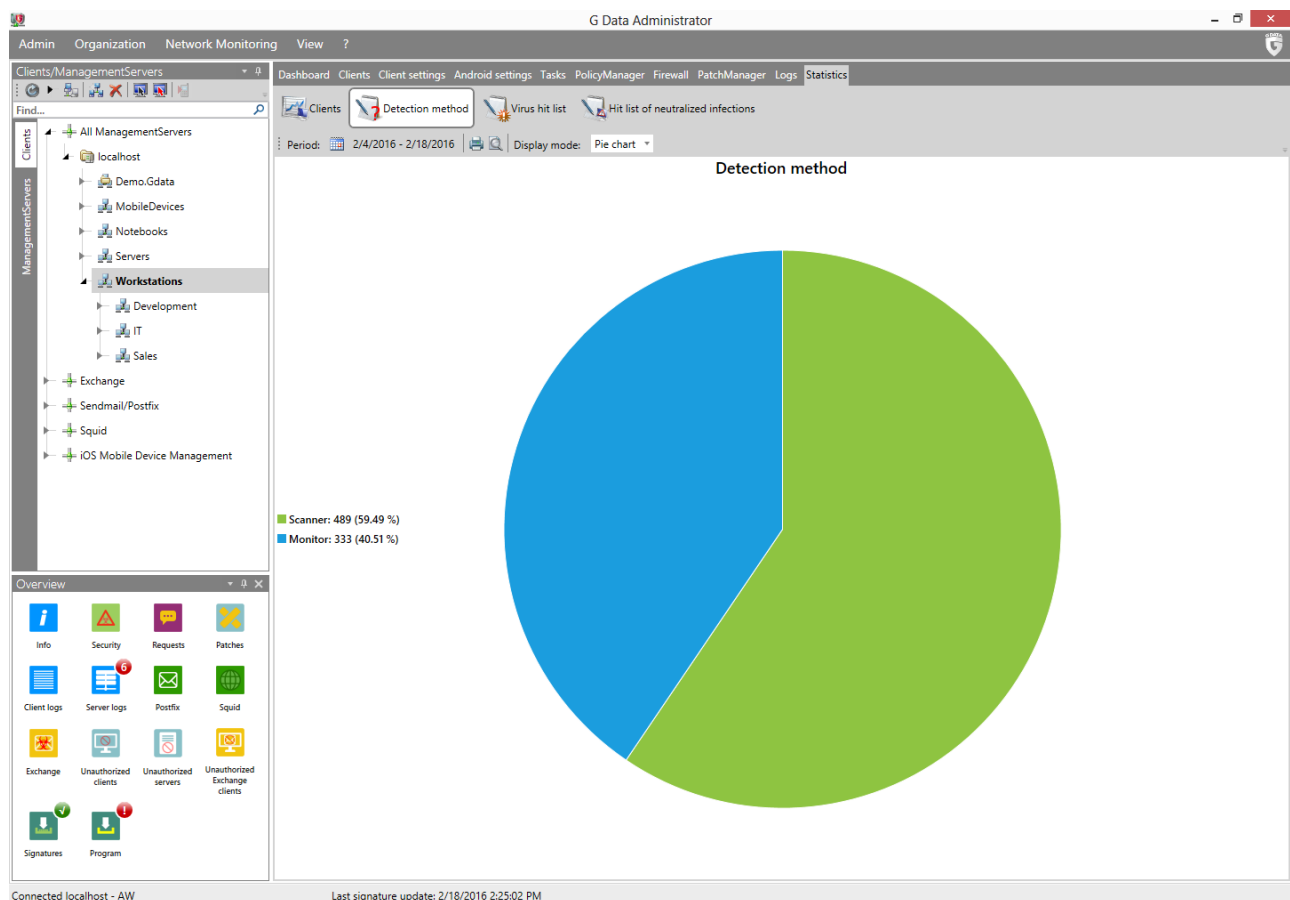


Image 25: G DATA Administrator, Statistics

6.2. Reports and Alarms

The LOGS > SECURITY EVENTS tab is the place where reports (notifications) from all security modules can be found. While threats are blocked fully automatically, it is essential to keep up with reports. They provide detailed information about the status of network clients, potential security problems and other modules. For example, when using the POLICYMANAGER or PATCHMANAGER modules, reports need to be monitored for policy change requests or patch deployment or rollback requests. Because of the sheer amount of reports that are potentially produced, it is essential that administrators know how to filter reports in order to reduce the signal to noise ratio.

Reports are generated by the different modules of the G DATA security solution. By default, all reports are listed in a flat list, in reverse chronological order (newest first). Depending on the number of clients, this list can seem overwhelming. Use the list control at the bottom of the window to set the number of items displayed per page. The group bar above the column headers can be used to group reports by column. For example, dragging the REPORTED BY column to the group bar will display all reports, grouped by the module they were reported by. Furthermore, the SECURITY EVENTS module offers a vast range of options to filter the list. Using the toolbar, different types of reports can be hidden, such as reports that depend on other reports on the list (preventing duplicates), or reports that have already been read. It is also possible to view reports of specific categories, such as viruses that have not yet been removed, quarantine contents, or BankGuard reports. Using the TIME FRAME option allows administrators to limit the number of displayed reports to a specific period of time.

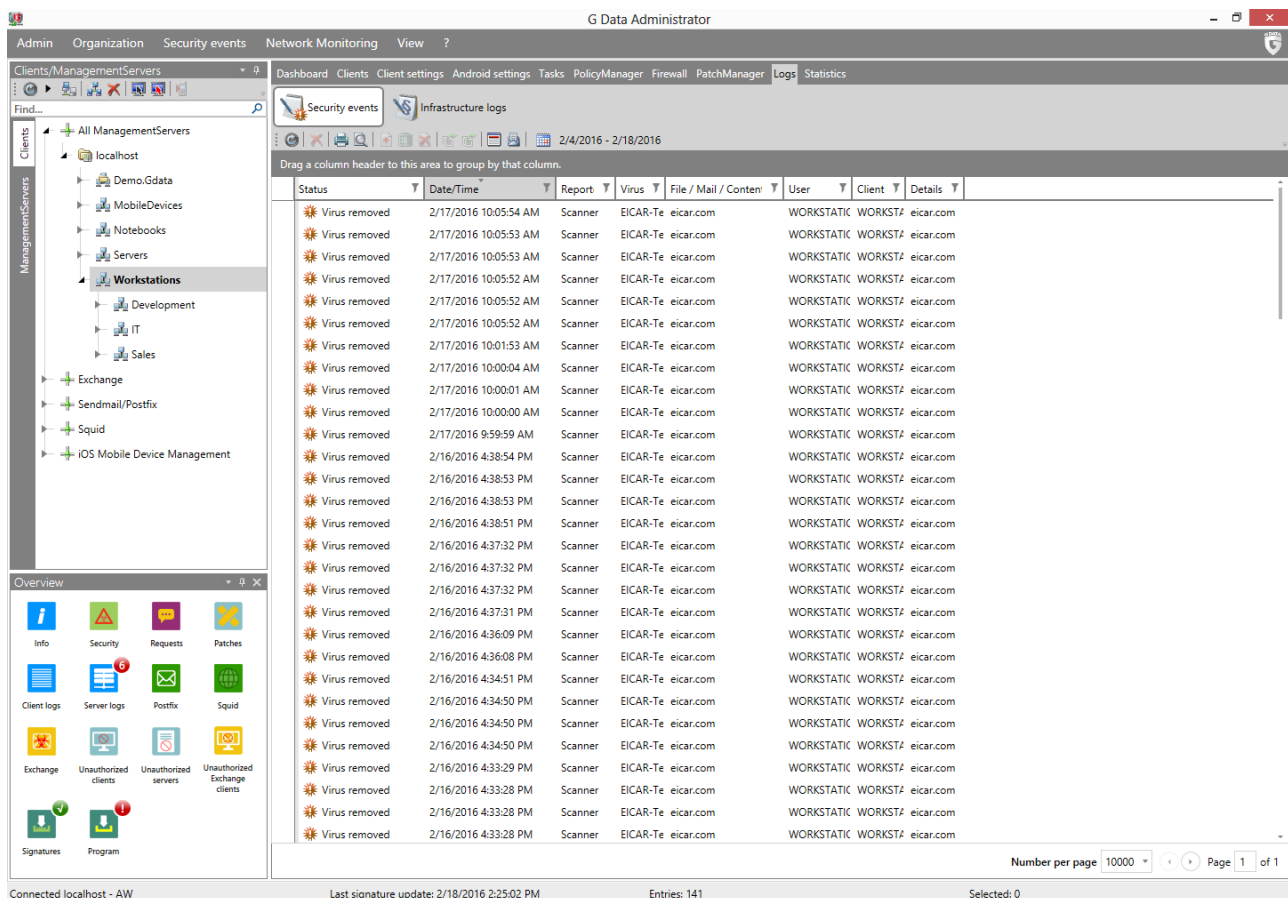


Image 26: G DATA Administrator, Security events

Most reports that are being produced concern malware that has already been blocked. Nevertheless, this type of reports is important. It allows administrators to gain insight in the state of their network and which machines have been attacked. Furthermore, false positives can be identified and added to an exception list. Monitor and Scanner reports show the action that was taken when the virus was found, such as virus removal, file quarantine or file deletion. Files that have been quarantined can be moved back (in case of a false positive) or cleaned directly from the SECURITY EVENTS tab by clicking the appropriate toolbar button. This can be risky: if a file has not been completely cleaned, it will remain infectious and can do further damage to the client system. The SECURITY EVENTS tab can also be used to directly define an exception. If a file is unjustly identified as malware, right-click on the report and select DEFINE MONITOR EXCEPTION to mark the file as safe for Monitor scans. Clients that have the Firewall module installed will also generate reports, for example when an application should be unblocked. Through the PROPERTIES option of these reports, firewall rules can directly be amended to allow the application.

In addition to security reports, some supporting modules also generate reports. The PolicyManager module logs web content, applications and devices that have been blocked due to policy settings and for which the user has requested access. By opening the report's properties, access rights can be added to the respective whitelist or blacklist. Similarly, PatchManager produces reports that can contain user requests, such as a patch distribution or rollback request. The Internet Security for Android component adds a report to the module when an end user requests access to a phone number that has been previously blacklisted.

Reports can be cleaned up automatically. The CLEANUP tab of the GENERAL SETTINGS module allows administrators to specify automatic report deletion for logs that are older than a certain number of months. This setting can drastically clean up reports, but may remove vital notifications if they have gone unread for a longer time. It is recommended that the report cleanup setting is only enabled as automated cleanup measure in a workflow where reports are timely read (or distributed via email).

It is strongly recommended to configure Alarms under GENERAL SETTINGS > EMAIL. This setting allows administrators to have critical reports sent directly to their email address, such as reports about virus detection, outdated clients, firewall actions and PolicyManager requests. Although not every virus event is critical, alarms are essential in order to keep an eye on what happens on the network. They can be used to notify administrators or their on-call teams in case of emergency, or to provide information to users that do not have access to G DATA Administrator or do not often log in. Use the GENERAL SETTINGS > EMAIL tab to configure which reports should be sent to whom. Add a recipient group containing at least the email addresses of the administrator(s) and IT personnel providing emergency response⁸. By default, only outdated virus signatures and problems with client virus signature databases or program files are reported. These notifications typically require (semi-)immediate responses, because they directly affect client security. Reports on virus detection and applications blocked by the firewall are of informational nature, but can be enabled to gain a more complete overview. When using the PolicyManager module, enable PERMISSION REQUESTS notifications to receive an email when users file requests through PolicyManager (such as the whitelisting of certain websites or applications).

⁸ Make sure that email recipient groups and an SMTP server have been entered in the Email settings window. See chapter 4.5.

6.3. ReportManager

ReportManager allows administrators to compile reports from various information modules. It offers a highly customizable experience and a deep insight into network and security status. ReportManager can be seen as the proactive counterpart to email notifications. With email notifications set for events such as virus alerts and PolicyManager requests, administrators can quickly react to events. ReportManager, on the other hand, offers analytical information and lets administrators plan ahead. As a complement to regularly logging in to G DATA Administrator, regular email reports should be a part of the day-to-day administration workflow.

The ReportManager module allows reports to be created containing information from different parts of the G DATA security solution. Charts can be combined into reports to create information tailored to specific audiences. For example, a report for management personnel would contain high-level statistics about the number of protected clients, up-to-date software versions and patch status. Technical and administrative personnel could receive detailed statistical information about network clients and repelled virus infections.

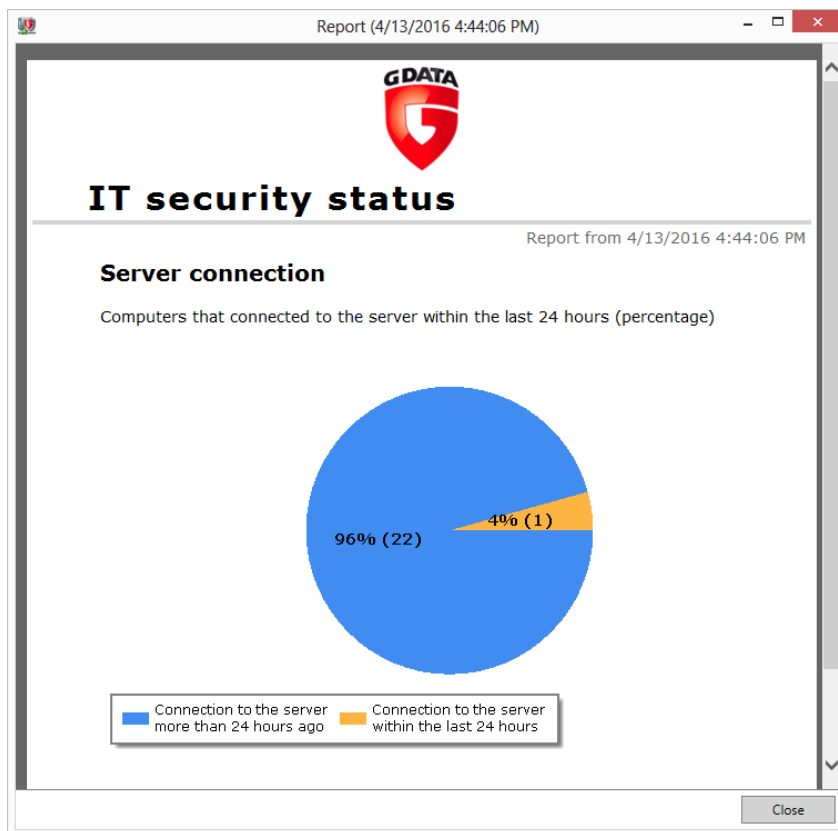


Image 27: G DATA Administrator, ReportManager, Report

Like scan or backup jobs, ReportManager can schedule report generation. Upon defining a new report, it can be configured to be run once, daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, biannually or annually. While a one-time report can be a great way to gain insight into a specific component of G DATA protection, the power of the ReportManager module is the possibility to automatically provide status reports over a longer period of time. Reports can be used as source of actionable information, helping administrators to stay up to date with what is happening within the network, but can also be saved for later external reporting.

It is recommended to configure reports to be emailed to the relevant personnel regularly. Use email recipient groups to coordinate report delivery (see Alarm configuration in chapter 6.2). The selection of modules depends on the target audience and information needs. The `CLIENT GENERAL` and `CLIENT PROTECTION` categories feature a number of charts with concise, concrete information. As a source of actionable information, it is recommended to create at least two types of daily reports: a management version of the report with high-level information, as well as a technically detailed status report for administrators. When using reports as a means of chronicling network protection over a longer time, a (bi-)weekly or monthly report can be defined. It is not necessary to define email recipients, for example if the preferred method of reading reports is opening them through G DATA Administrator. When using the PatchManager module, the additional category `PATCHMANAGER` features several charts that can be added to reports chronicling the status of patch deployment. This is especially helpful when setting up a patch management procedure (see chapter 15).

While it can be tempting to rely on daily or weekly reports alone, they are not a replacement for regular checkups, such as logging in to G DATA Administrator and checking the `DASHBOARD` and `SECURITY EVENTS` sections.

7. Managing clients

Proper network security starts with proper client management. By keeping tracks of active network clients and organizing them into relevant groups, administrators can reduce the chance of complications when deploying software and configuration changes. Ideally, the layout of every enterprise network has been defined in advance, following logical structures (see chapter 1). These structures can be mirrored in the G DATA security solution to allow for more efficient client management. Through the use of client groups, administrators can create logical entities that can be managed all at once. Security settings, backup jobs, policies and many more options can be applied to groups. When using Active Directory, entities can automatically be imported to save time in configuring groups. For networks that are big enough to have deployed Active Directory previously, it is recommended to integrate AD entities into G DATA Administrator groups. This reduces the time needed to reorganize groups, and cuts down on the amount of time needed for the security configuration of newly deployed clients.

7.1. Using groups

The CLIENTS view of G DATA Administrator offers some tools to divide clients into groups. Groups can be made and populated manually, or automatically using an existing Active Directory setup (see chapter 7.2). In its essence, groups function like a folder structure. Clients can be dragged freely between groups, allowing administrators to quickly create elaborate group structures. However, some planning should go into creating groups. There are several reasons for grouping clients together. Machines that are being used for similar tasks (e.g. development, back office, sales) will have similar software deployments. By

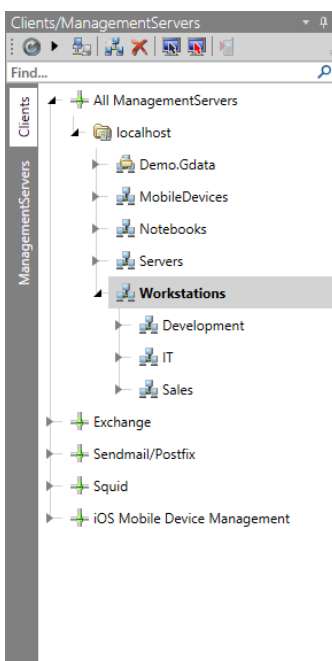


Image 28: G DATA Administrator, Clients

grouping them together, identical software usage policies can be rolled out. When using PatchManager, each similarly deployed group can be tested quickly by deploying patches to one designated testing client. A second possibility, partially overlapping with task- or software deployment-based grouping, is physical grouping. Client machines that are physically located close to each other can be bundled. Often this corresponds to branch offices or departments (in which case there is an overlap with task-based grouping). Location-based grouping has the advantage that it is easier to plan maintenance and configuration changes that require physical access to the machines. Many of these considerations are identical to the questions that need to be asked during the definition and setup of the local network. A simple solution is simply mirroring the network layout (see chapter 1.1).

Having defined groups, administrators can take advantage of several options. The most basic way to use groups is to apply settings to multiple clients at once. Select a group in the CLIENTS view and edit its settings (for example, protection settings in the CLIENT SETTINGS module). Clicking APPLY will then apply the chosen settings to all clients in the group. Alternatively, settings from one client can easily be transposed to the whole group by clicking APPLY CURRENT CLIENT SETTINGS TO ENTIRE GROUP. This makes it very easy to experiment with different settings on one client and afterwards applying the tried-and-tested configuration to the rest of the group.

When selecting a group in the `CLIENTS` view, not all clients may have identical settings. Clients with settings that do not match the group settings are listed at the bottom of the module panel under `CLIENTS/GROUPS WITH DEVIATING SETTINGS`. They can quickly be reset to the group settings or selected in the `CLIENTS` panel to enable administrators to go over that specific client's configuration.

Groups make client selection significantly easier. Processes like patch deployment or the planning of staged update distribution can be carried out swiftly by selecting the appropriate group. Giving each group a descriptive name is essential, corresponding with the physical location, task type, department or any other logical entity that the system was based on. Additionally, settings can be easily exported and imported. By selecting a client, right-clicking and choosing `EXPORT SETTINGS`, the settings from the PolicyManager and Client settings modules can be exported to a `.dbdat` file. `IMPORT SETTINGS` can be used to selectively import settings back from a `.dbdat` file to a client or group.

Clients that are installed locally connect to the ManagementServer automatically. Since they have not been added to a group yet, all such clients are added to the group `NEW CLIENTS`. Administrators can move them manually using the tree view in G DATA Administrator, but they can also be moved automatically. This can save a lot of time in networks where clients are regularly installed locally. The `RULE WIZARD` allows administrators to create rules based on computer name, IP address, domain or default gateway. The list of clients is regularly checked and any clients that match a rule are moved to a predefined group. It is recommended to configure the wizard to apply the rules only to clients from the group `NEW CLIENTS`; however, they can also be applied to all clients.

7.2. Integrating Active Directory

Active Directory is a directory service for Windows networks. One or more Active Directory servers within the network host information about units within the network, such as users, computers, and resources. Active Directory is a great help in organizing a network, authenticating users and coordinating access to resources. Effort that has been put into setting up a network structure in AD does not have to be duplicated when deploying and using a G DATA security solution.

Any AD container or organizational unit (OU) can be linked to a group in the `CLIENTS` view. All current and future computers that are contained in the item will be automatically added to the overview in G DATA Administrator. An AD item can be assigned to a group by right-clicking the group and choosing `ASSIGN AD ITEM TO GROUP`. Each group can only be assigned one AD item. The dialog window allows administrators to select items from the default domain or from another domain (by entering domain controller, domain, username and password). Upon confirming the AD group and refreshing the `CLIENTS` view, the group is transformed into an AD-linked group and will have all computers from the AD unit added to it. G DATA ManagementServer automatically synchronizes AD items with the domain controller every 6 hours, a value which can be changed under `GENERAL SETTINGS > SYNCHRONIZATION`. AD-linked groups can also be updated directly by right-clicking them (or their parent ManagementServer) and choosing `UPDATE ACTIVE DIRECTORY`.

Assigning AD items to groups eliminates the time needed when manually adding clients to groups. For new clients, configuration settings and other policies can be inherited automatically from the parent group, eliminating the need to configure new machines immediately. Further automation can be realized by automatically installing G DATA Security Client on machines that are newly added to the AD group.

This option can be enabled while assigning an AD item to a group in G DATA Administrator. On the condition that the system requirements for a remote installation have been met (see chapter 4.8.2.1), G DATA Security Client will then be automatically deployed to every newly added Active Directory client.

7.3. Signature and program file updates

The signature-based protection layers of the G DATA security solution need to be supplied with updated virus signatures in order to recognize the latest threats. Each client can independently initiate the update procedure, checking the server for new signature files, or virus signatures can be pushed to the clients. Depending on the wishes of the network administrator, clients can check the network's central G DATA ManagementServer, or directly contact G DATA's hosted update servers. For enterprise networks, it is recommended to configure the clients to obtain signature updates from G DATA ManagementServer. This allows for more control in case an update needs to be rolled back and reduces the amount of network traffic. In addition to signature files, clients can also receive updated program files. G DATA Security Client regularly receives updates to improve protection. Unlike virus signatures, clients cannot obtain program files directly from G DATA's hosted update servers. To reduce server load, virus signatures and program files update can be distributed using a peer-to-peer system, enabling outdated clients to obtain files from already up-to-date clients.

Two steps need to be configured to enable automatic virus signature and program file updates for all clients. First, ManagementServer should obtain update files from the G DATA update servers regularly. The optimal setting is to configure automatic updates – if that is not possible, updates can be carried out by connecting to the G DATA update server manually or by performing an offline update. Second, the updated files should be distributed to the clients. This too should be an automated process, with several settings available to optimize distribution and prevent network load spikes.

7.3.1. Obtain updates

ManagementServer needs to obtain the latest files from G DATA's update servers. This action can be manually initialized or scheduled to happen regularly using the UPDATES module of G DATA Administrator.

The recommended setting is to check the update servers for new virus signatures every hour. Program file updates are not released on an hourly basis, so the update interval can be set to a daily or weekly check. Even for a server that is not connected to a permanent internet connection, scheduling virus signature and program file updates is recommended. The option ON INTERNET CONNECTION carries out an update only when G DATA ManagementServer detects that the server has an internet connection available. There is no reason not to let G DATA ManagementServer automatically update signatures and program files, except when an internet connection is not always available. To prevent files from being distributed automatically to clients, the CLIENT SETTINGS module is the most appropriate place.

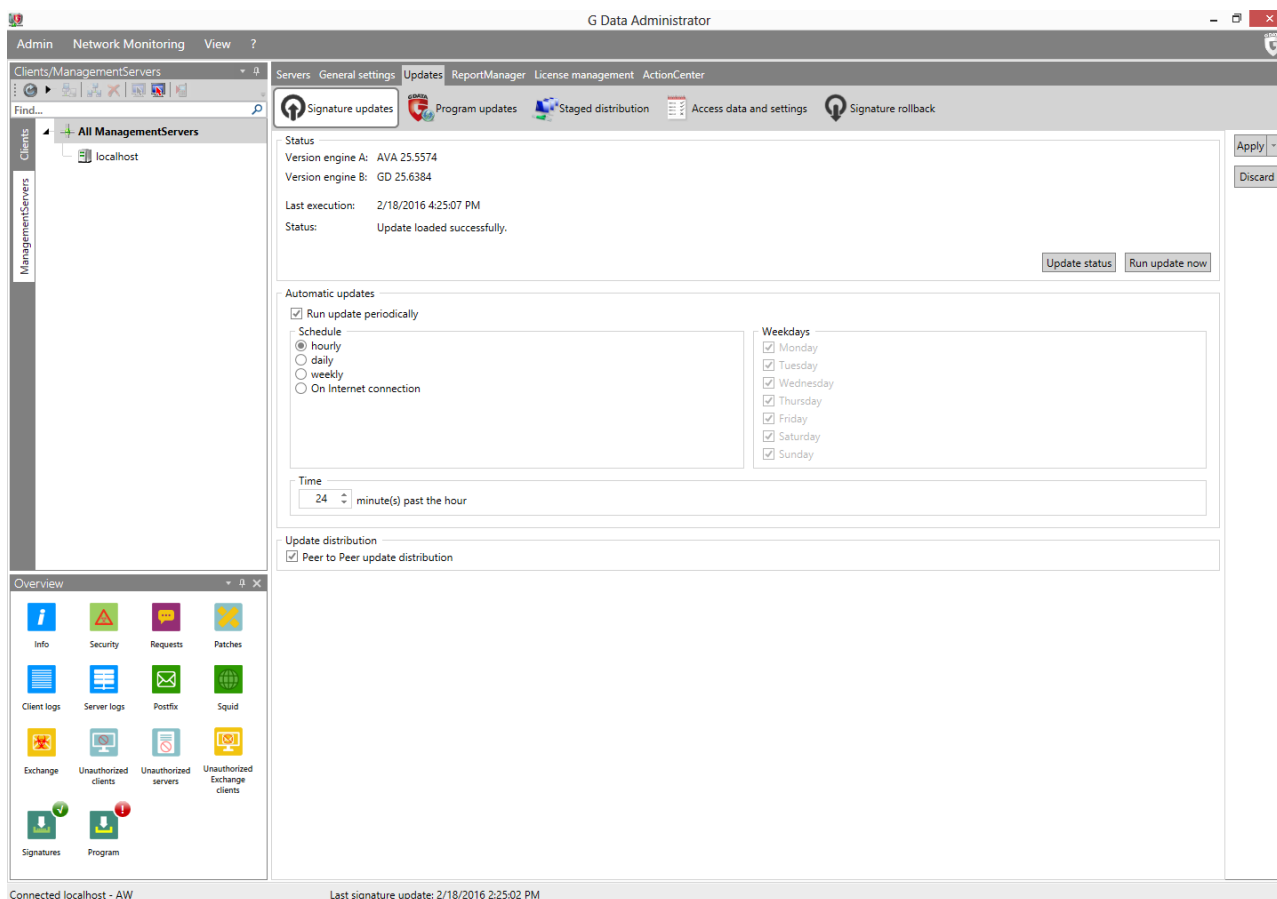


Image 29: G DATA Administrator, Updates, Signature updates

For some ManagementServers, a permanent internet connection might not be available for practical or security reasons. While a ManagementServer cannot automatically update itself without an active internet connection, it can still receive the latest server program files, client program files and virus signatures by using offline updates. The Internet Update tool (see chapter 4.6) can be used to apply update files that have been copied from another ManagementServer to the server without an internet connection. This way, updates can be applied by copying them onto a USB stick or burning them to a CD or DVD. Ensure that a ManagementServer with internet connection has the latest updates, either by using the Internet Update tool or via G DATA Administrator. Navigate to the folder %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Updates and copy the following subfolders onto a USB stick or burn them to a CD or DVD: bd, Client, GD_SIG and SERVER12. On the target ManagementServer, insert the CD, DVD or USB stick, and copy the update folders into a temporary folder (for example, C:\Updates). Open the Internet Update tool and check the option OFFLINE UPDATE. This changes the behavior of the three update buttons: when starting a VIRUS DATABASE, PROGRAM FILES (CLIENT) or PROGRAM FILES (SERVER) update, a popup will prompt for a folder. Select the folder that contains all update folders (for example, C:\Updates), and click OK. Start with the server program files, to ensure that the server itself is at the latest version, and then update the client program files and virus database.

7.3.2. Deploy updates

The second step is the actual distribution of virus signatures and program file updates to the clients. The GENERAL tab of the CLIENTS SETTINGS module allows administrators to configure update settings for one or

more clients (by selecting a group of clients or the ManagementServer as a whole). It is recommended to enable automatic updates of virus signatures, as clients need to have the latest virus signatures in order to recognize new threats. The UPDATE SETTINGS window has various options for virus signature downloads. Clients can connect to the central ManagementServer and obtain virus signatures there. They will check the ManagementServer for updated virus signatures in the interval defined under GENERAL SETTINGS > SYNCHRONIZATION. To enable central management (with possibilities such as signature rollbacks), it is recommended to have clients download their virus signatures from the ManagementServer. Alternatively, they can download virus signatures from the G DATA update servers, in every case (RUN INTERNET UPDATE INDEPENDENTLY) or only if there is no connection to the ManagementServer (RUN INTERNET UPDATE WITH OBSOLETE VIRUS SIGNATURES INDEPENDENTLY IF NO CONNECTION TO THE MANAGEMENTSERVER CAN BE ESTABLISHED). Clients that do not often connect to the ManagementServer, such as laptops that are not always connected to the company network, should be configured to use the G DATA update servers as a fallback possibility. To allow clients to connect to the G DATA update servers by themselves, login info needs to be defined in the SETTINGS AND SCHEDULING window. Clients can use ManagementServer's access data, or their own (if available). In this case, the SIGNATURE UPDATE SCHEDULE tab should be used to schedule virus signature updates. Hourly updates are the recommended setting for virus signatures, but for clients that are not always online, the option WHEN ESTABLISHING INTERNET CONNECTION can be used.

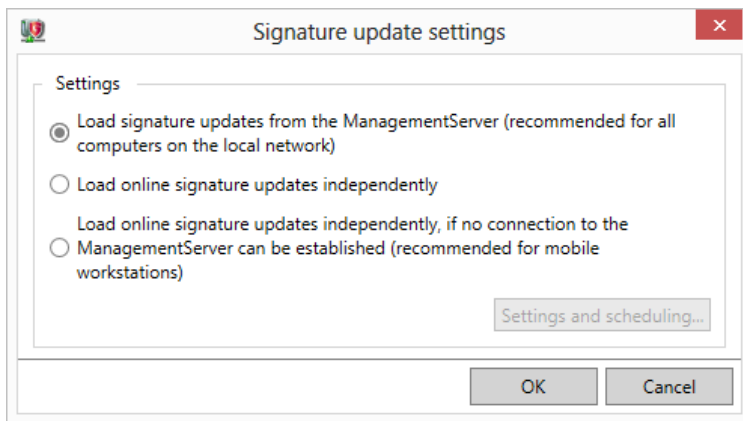


Image 30: G DATA Administrator, Client settings, General, Update settings

Program file updates can be installed automatically as well, which helps clients make use of the latest security features of the client software. However, there are more caveats here than with signature updates. An update of the client software may require additional testing to guarantee compatibility with all client configurations in the network. While minor version changes are usually non-intrusive, a staged rollout is recommended. The STAGED DISTRIBUTION panel of the UPDATES module can be used to enable staged distribution. This initiates a mathematical calculation where all active network clients are divided into groups (stages). Only after the program file update has been successfully rolled out to clients in one stage, will the clients in the next stage be served. If there are too many clients where the installation fails, distribution is halted automatically. The number of stages can be defined manually. The larger the network, the more stages should be used to ensure a problem-free deployment. Additionally, the number of days after which the next stage should be deployed can be configured. The default of 3 days allows administrators to check clients for issues, and to halt distribution of a specific update if serious problems are occurring. If required, staged distribution settings can be optimized by editing its settings in the configuration file Config.xml (see chapter 18.2).

Program file updates sometimes require the client to be rebooted. For some client roles, this needs careful planning to make sure machines are not being rebooted in the middle of an important task. The `REBOOT AFTER UPDATE` setting controls client behavior in these cases. The end user can be notified that the client needs to be rebooted, a reboot can be forced or a report can be created in the `SECURITY EVENTS` section, allowing the administrator to manually intervene and reboot the machine at a later point in time.

Distributing updates requires sufficient network bandwidth to be available. ManagementServer and its subnet servers regularly send signature file updates and program file updates to all clients in the network. Update files are incremental and therefore relatively small in size. Still, for networks with large amounts of clients this can cause load spikes. To prevent this from happening, clients can be configured to distribute updates using a peer-to-peer system. This option can be enabled under `UPDATES > SIGNATURE UPDATES`. When enabled, ManagementServer distributes updated signature files to a number of clients, which will in turn update each other. With every update that is distributed by the ManagementServer, clients receive information about clients in their vicinity that have not yet been updated and distribute the updates there. The peer-to-peer system can be used without having to configure any particulars, but its settings can be optimized for specific network situations (see chapter 18.2).

Even without automatic updates, clients can still be updated. Administrators can allow the end user to initiate signature updates by themselves (see chapter 7.4). This can be an option for end users that only rarely connect to the enterprise network but want to stay in control of the update process. Alternatively, the administrator can use the `CLIENTS` module of G DATA Administrator to keep tabs on the version numbers and updates that have been deployed to each client. The `CLIENTS` module shows the version of G DATA Security Client, information about the latest updates for engines A and B, and the time at which the client last connected to the server. By sorting and/or grouping the list of clients by these properties, outdated clients can be spotted quickly and updated manually by right-clicking on the client and choosing `UPDATE VIRUS SIGNATURES NOW` OR `UPDATE PROGRAM FILES NOW`. An alternative for using the `CLIENTS` module is obtaining version information by looking at the `DASHBOARD` or configuring email reports (see chapter 6).

7.3.3. Rollbacks

Occasionally, virus signature updates can cause problems for specific clients. A generic virus signature may falsely recognize a file as being malicious, or a signature file gets corrupted. The first thing to do is block the specific set of virus signatures (engine update) that is causing the problem. Using the `UPDATES > SIGNATURE ROLLBACK` function, the update can be blocked. It will no longer be distributed by the ManagementServer, and all clients that contact the ManagementServer will be informed of the block.

If a rollback does not take care of the problem, for example when a file got corrupted, a complete update of the virus signatures may be necessary. Normally, G DATA ManagementServer and G DATA Security Client only download partial (incremental) virus signature updates to reduce network load and traffic. In the `UPDATES` module, the tab `ACCESS DATA AND SETTINGS` offers the option `VERSION CHECK`. By default, it is enabled, causing G DATA ManagementServer to compare updates by version number only. By disabling the option and forcing a virus database and/or program file update on the respective tabs, ManagementServer will check the integrity of all update files and re-download them if necessary. The `CLIENT SETTINGS` module can be used to subsequently disable the `VERSION CHECK` for the affected client(s), by opening the `UPDATE SETTINGS`

on the GENERAL tab. Initiating the update procedure for that client then supplies a full set of signatures and/or program files.

7.4. End user security permissions

Security settings are managed centrally by the administrator. However, in some cases it can be useful to let end users initiate virus scans or change settings. Other times, administrators may need to access local security settings while responding to a support call. The GENERAL tab of the CLIENT SETTINGS module lets administrators grant several permissions to be changed locally using the system tray icon of G DATA Security Client. These options can be password-protected, a practical possibility if not all end-users on the machine should be granted access, or if only the administrator should be allowed to change settings.

To reduce the number of support calls in case of a possible malware infection, end users can be allowed to check files or folders for malware manually. By selecting the option ALLOW THE USER TO RUN VIRUS CHECKS, a manual virus scan can be initiated, regardless of the server-side scan schedule. See chapter 9.4 for more information about local scan jobs. If the option ALLOW THE USER TO DOWNLOAD SIGNATURE UPDATES has been enabled, end users are allowed to update the local virus signatures independently from the update schedule. This can be useful for end users that regularly use their devices while not being connected to the corporate network, such as laptops. On the other hand, it can lead to fragmentation in the number of signature file versions available across the network, complicating client management and troubleshooting.

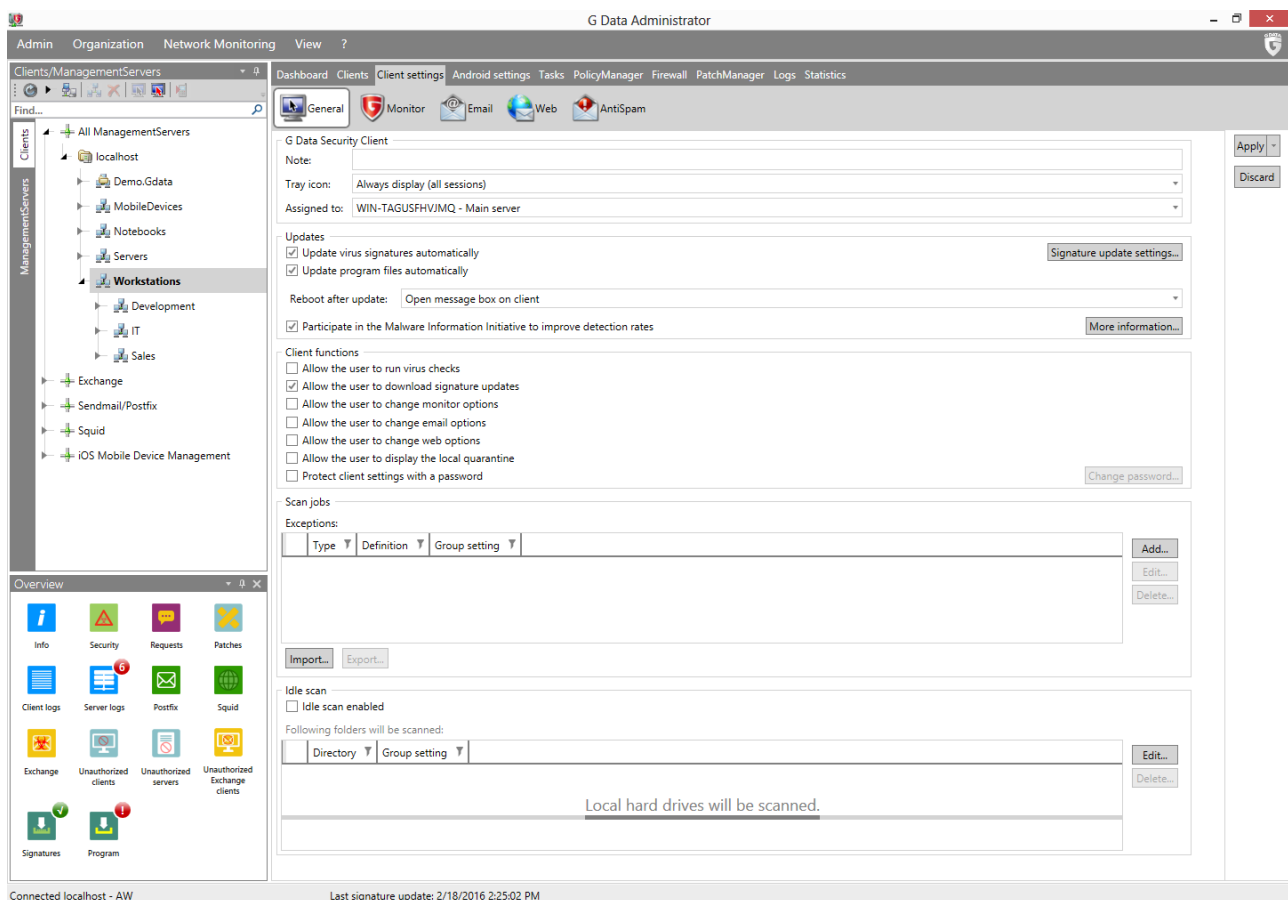


Image 31: G DATA Administrator, Clients settings, General

All security options for the file system monitor, email scan and web scan can be made accessible to the end user. This possibility should be handled with care. In order to keep a unified security policy, it is recommended not to let end users change security settings. All changes should be authorized by the administrator and tested beforehand. By enabling one of the appropriate options, all security measures can be disabled by the end user. Only if administrative access to the settings is required locally when servicing a client, the option should be enabled, and only if a password is set.

G DATA Security Client can offer access to the local quarantine. If the administrator has defined rules for infected files to be moved to the quarantine, end users can have a look at the files that have been isolated. For each infected file, the date and time of detection are listed, as well as the full file and folder path, and the name of the virus. Files can be manually disinfected, deleted or moved back. This last option is the reason that local access to the quarantine should only be granted to experienced users or administrators. Files that are moved back without disinfecting them first can pose a risk to the system.

When using the PatchManager module, administrators can choose to allow end users to view patches that have been installed on the system or patches that are available but have not been installed yet. This option does not pose a security risk, and can be useful if end users encounter problems after a patch installation and want to file a rollback request, or if a patch should be deployed with priority to fix an end user's compatibility problem. More information can be found in chapter 15.

Administrators that have enabled the firewall can allow users to enable or disable the firewall, and to change the off-site configuration. Letting users disable the firewall at will is not recommended, unless there is a strict security solution in place on the network level. Changing the off-site configuration is useful for clients that are often connected to networks other than the enterprise network. Users will be able to create rules and rule sets for those networks, which will automatically be overruled when connecting to the enterprise network. More information about rule sets can be found in chapter 12.

Note that permission to change G DATA Security Client settings is not related to application permissions, device permissions, web content control or internet usage time. Permissions for these types of actions can be granted or revoked using the PolicyManager module (see chapter 14).

7.5. Performance

G DATA ManagementServer can manage a large number of clients. Depending on the size of the network, the number of jobs configured, and synchronization settings, performance loss can occur when running a large number of concurrent actions. Several measures are available to resolve performance issues. It is recommended that these measures are only taken when there is a noticeable performance loss. Proactively limiting concurrent client activity is not required if performance has not been impacted.

The **GENERAL SETTINGS > SYNCHRONIZATION** tab offers the option to limit the number of concurrent connections to the ManagementServer. If there appears to be a performance loss due to too many client connections at the same time, the connection limit can cap the number of concurrent connections. If scheduled tasks or jobs are causing performance loss on the server, try to reduce the number of tasks scheduled at the same time. Especially if clients are set to regularly report their status to the server, performance can be negatively affected. Furthermore, synchronization of settings between server, subnet server(s) and clients can be set to occur less frequently, although that will not significantly boost performance in most cases.

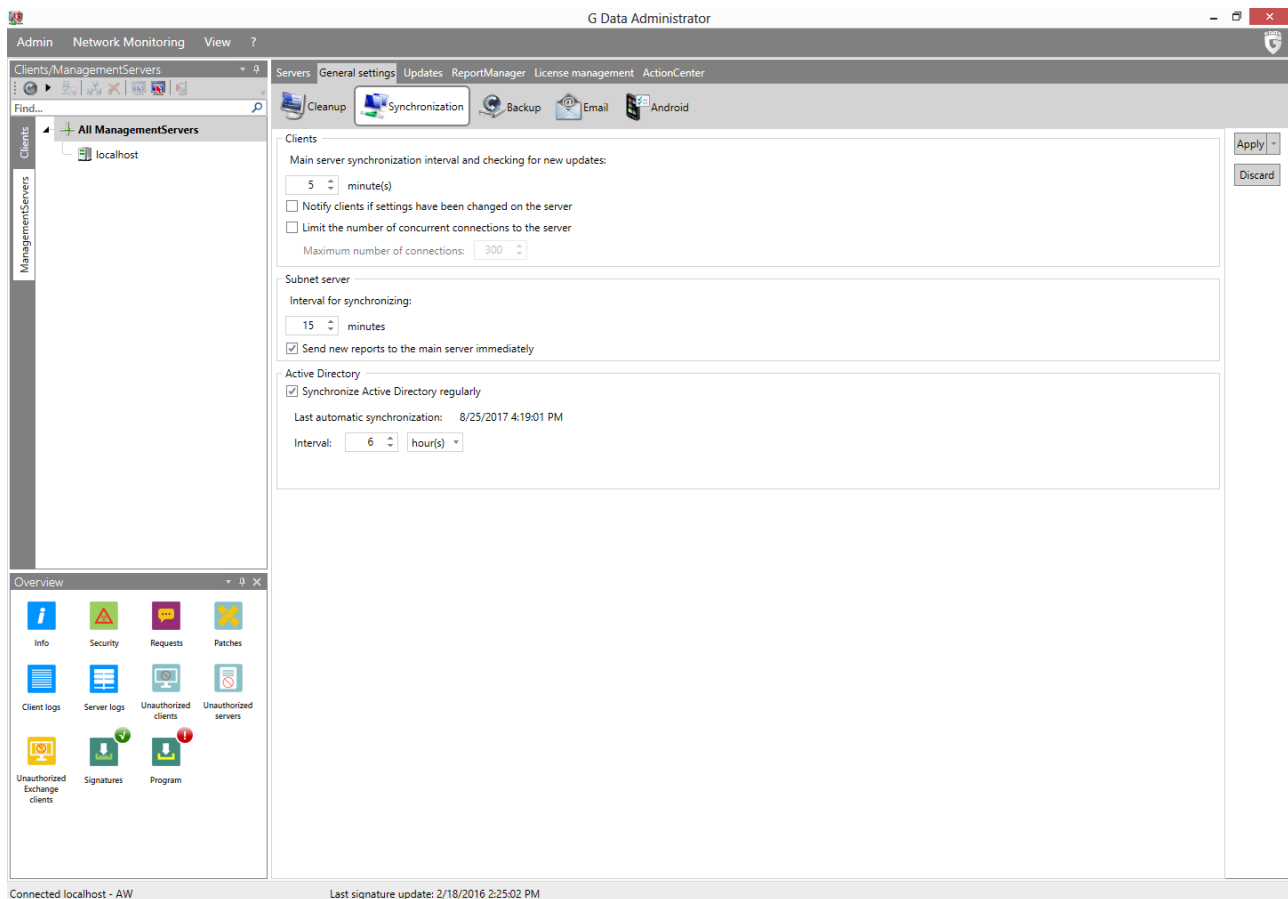


Image 32: G DATA Administrator, General settings, Synchronization

An alternative to reducing the number of scheduled tasks or client connections to the ManagementServer is deploying one or more subnet servers. Clients will connect to their assigned subnet server instead of the ManagementServer and thus reduce the ManagementServer load. See chapter 4.10 for information about installing subnet server(s).

7.6. Malware Information Initiative

The G DATA SecurityLabs continuously research new technologies to protect our customers against malware (viruses, worms and malicious programs). The more information is available, the higher the efficacy of the technologies. However, much information is available only on systems that have been attacked or infected. In order to include even such information in the analyses, the G DATA Malware Information Initiative was founded. In this context, malware-related information can be sent to the G DATA SecurityLabs. Under CLIENT SETTINGS > GENERAL > UPDATES, you can choose whether the client should participate in the Malware Information Initiative.

7.7. Managing Linux/Mac clients

After deploying G DATA Security Client for Linux/Mac (see chapter 4.8.3), Linux and Mac clients are automatically added to the CLIENTS view. They can be managed using the same modules as their Windows counterparts. However, because they do not have identical functionality, some functions are not available. When a single Linux/Mac client or a group containing only Linux/Mac clients has been selected

in the **CLIENTS** view, functions that do not apply to Linux/Mac clients are grayed out. When a group containing both Windows and Linux/Mac clients is selected, functions that do not apply to Linux/Mac clients are displayed with green text. Those settings will be applied to the Windows clients, but not to the Linux/Mac clients.

7.8. Removing a client

If a client is exhibiting compatibility problems, or if it no longer needs to be managed by G DATA security software, it can be removed. This process consists of two stages: removing G DATA Security Client from the client, and removing the client from G DATA ManagementServer's client list. The first step can be carried out by opening the **CLIENTS** module of G DATA Administrator, selecting the appropriate client, and choosing **UNINSTALL G DATA SECURITY CLIENT** from the **CLIENTS** menu. This will prompt the administrator to choose if only the client should be removed, or also its associated jobs, reports, messages and backup archives. If a client is to be restored later, it is recommended to keep the associated data. For clients that were installed on hardware that will be phased out, all data can be removed. As an alternative to remote uninstallation, the procedure can also be initiated locally on the client (see chapter 18.7).

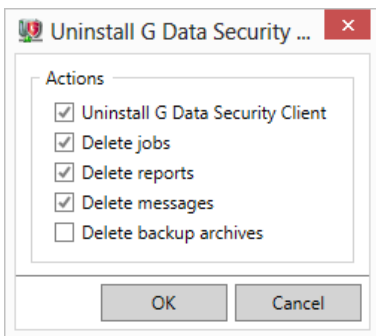


Image 33: G DATA Administrator, Clients, Uninstall G DATA Security Client

After G DATA Security Client has been removed, the client machine will still be listed in G DATA Administrator's **CLIENTS** view. It can still be managed, although many functions will only become available after reinstalling Security Client. To completely remove a client from the server, right-click it in the **CLIENTS** view and choose **DELETE**. After confirming the action, the client will be removed from the list and will have to be added manually if it is to be managed again.

8. Real time protection

Client security is a multi-layered solution, making sure a malware infection can be prevented at several stages. Before malware can infect a PC, it needs to breach network security (such as a gateway firewall) as well as local client security (such as a file system monitor or an HTTP traffic filter). The local security components play a very important role in preventing malware from infecting systems. Unauthorized network connections are blocked by the local firewall (see chapter 13 for more information). Traffic that is allowed through, will reach the client, which will then filter it using several security modules. Real time security modules like a file system monitor, heuristic scanning and behavior-based scanning make sure that malware is stopped before it can execute, regardless of attack vector. When infectious emails are sent, malware attachments are removed or quarantined directly, without the file ever reaching the file system. A similar approach is taken by the internet security module, which filters HTTP traffic and blocks it in case of suspicion. If malware reaches the system through other methods, such as removable media, the file system monitor will block it as soon as the malicious file is written to the hard disk or run. Together, the security measures ensure that malware will not be able to infect the system. That means that the measures should be configured together instead of as separate entities.

Although it can be tempting to enable maximum security for all clients across the network, not all security settings can be identically applied to all clients. Some clients have to be configured with maximum security in mind, for others performance is more important. Security options can be configured for single clients, or for groups, depending on which item is selected in the `CLIENTS` view. It is recommended to organize all network clients into appropriate groups, to be able to apply relevant security settings to multiple machines at once (see chapter 7 for more information on managing clients).

Real time client protection should be configured before deploying any clients. Using G DATA Administrator, client devices in the network can be located, organized and configured before G DATA Security Client is deployed. For each client or group, make sure to configure optimal protection to be enabled as soon as the client is deployed. Ideally, these settings have been optimized for each client. However, this can be difficult without being able to measure the actual performance at this stage. Administrators can choose to deploy a restrictive set of security settings by default, moderating them afterwards if required. Alternatively, baseline security settings can be used to ensure that performance and usability do not suffer before the administrator has had a chance to adjust protection settings following deployment.

Which settings should be applied to which client depends on the software and hardware that are in use on the client, as well as its role (the context in which the machine is used). For most security settings, only a general recommendation can be given. Often, company policies will dictate certain levels of security, forming a useful guideline for the implementation of a security solution. Other times, a case-by-case policy has to be developed per network zone or even on the client level. This can be a process of trial-and-error – supporting the recommendation that a security solution should be gradually rolled out and its settings carefully monitored.

The core security settings for real time protection can be set using G DATA Administrator's `CLIENT SETTINGS` module. The settings can be adapted for each client or group and their intended use. To help configure each client appropriately, the `GENERAL` tab features the `NOTE` field. Administrators can add a description of

the client or its deployment, or any other note that helps distinguish between specific security configurations.

8.1. Internet traffic scans

After the firewall, the next line of defense is checking traffic that has been allowed through. G DATA Security Client analyzes various types of traffic.

8.1.1. HTTP

By entering a port under **CLIENT SETTINGS > WEB > INTERNET TRAFFIC (HTTP)**, G DATA Security Client scans incoming HTTP traffic (default: 80 and 443/SSL). Browsing websites that contain malicious software, downloading malware or visiting a phishing website will trigger a warning and access will be blocked. Scanning larger files for malware can take a while; to prevent browsers from timing out during the scan, the **AVOID BROWSER TIMEOUT** checkbox can be ticked. It is recommended to leave this option enabled. To prevent delays, a maximum file size can be defined. Any HTTP traffic containing files that are larger will not be scanned. This option can increase performance, but administrators need to make sure that downloads are then scanned by one of the other security layers (such as the file system monitor). If traffic from a certain website does not need to be scanned, such as a corporate intranet, that website can be added to the **GLOBAL WHITELIST FOR WEB PROTECTION**.

8.1.2. Email

The second traffic category that can be scanned is email (default ports: 110/POP3, 143/IMAP, 25/SMTP)⁹. The ports can be adjusted at the bottom of the **CLIENTS SETTINGS > EMAIL** settings panel, additionally allowing administrators to prevent email client timeouts by enabling the option for the appropriate ports. Under **SCAN OPTIONS**, administrators can define which scan engines should be used. G DATA uses two scan engines for optimal security, but in cases where this affects performance, it can be effective to enable only one of the two engines (see chapter 8.4).

8.1.2.1. Incoming

All incoming email is automatically checked for viruses. If malware is found, email messages can be disinfected or have the infected contents removed and a notice about the infection can be appended to the email body. It is recommended to disinfect email messages and have infected content automatically deleted if disinfection fails. A more no-nonsense policy is to automatically remove infected content, optionally notifying the user. The **LOG ONLY / INSERT WARNING** option can be used in networks, network zones or departments where end users need access to incoming email even if they contain infected content or attachments. In that case, malware can still be countered by the file system scanner. However, this is not a recommended scenario, as disabling a layer of protection increases the risk of a malware infection. Networks that use Microsoft Outlook in combination with Microsoft Exchange Server cannot make use of the default port monitoring options, because communication between Exchange Server and clients is

⁹ Note that this only covers client-side scanning of email messages. Server-side email scans can be carried out using G DATA MailSecurity.

sent over a proprietary protocol. To ensure that Exchange environments are secured, administrators should enable the Outlook plugin or install MailSecurity's Exchange plugin (see chapter 4.2.4.1).

As an additional recognition measure, OutbreakShield can be enabled. It uses its own signatures to improve the detection rate of spam campaigns that are distributing malware. By basing itself on general characteristics of the mass distribution of spam messages, detection is already possible even if the virus signatures of the traditional engines have not been updated yet. OutbreakShield is relatively light-weight and does not influence client performance.

In addition to email security scans, G DATA can also combat spam. The CLIENT SETTINGS > ANTISPAM function checks email traffic and filters (suspected) spam. In combination with filter rules in the local email client or the Outlook plugin, ANTISPAM helps get rid of spam before it even reaches the inbox. ANTISPAM does not have a big impact on system performance, but can be disabled if other spam measures are in place, such as a mail server-based solution.

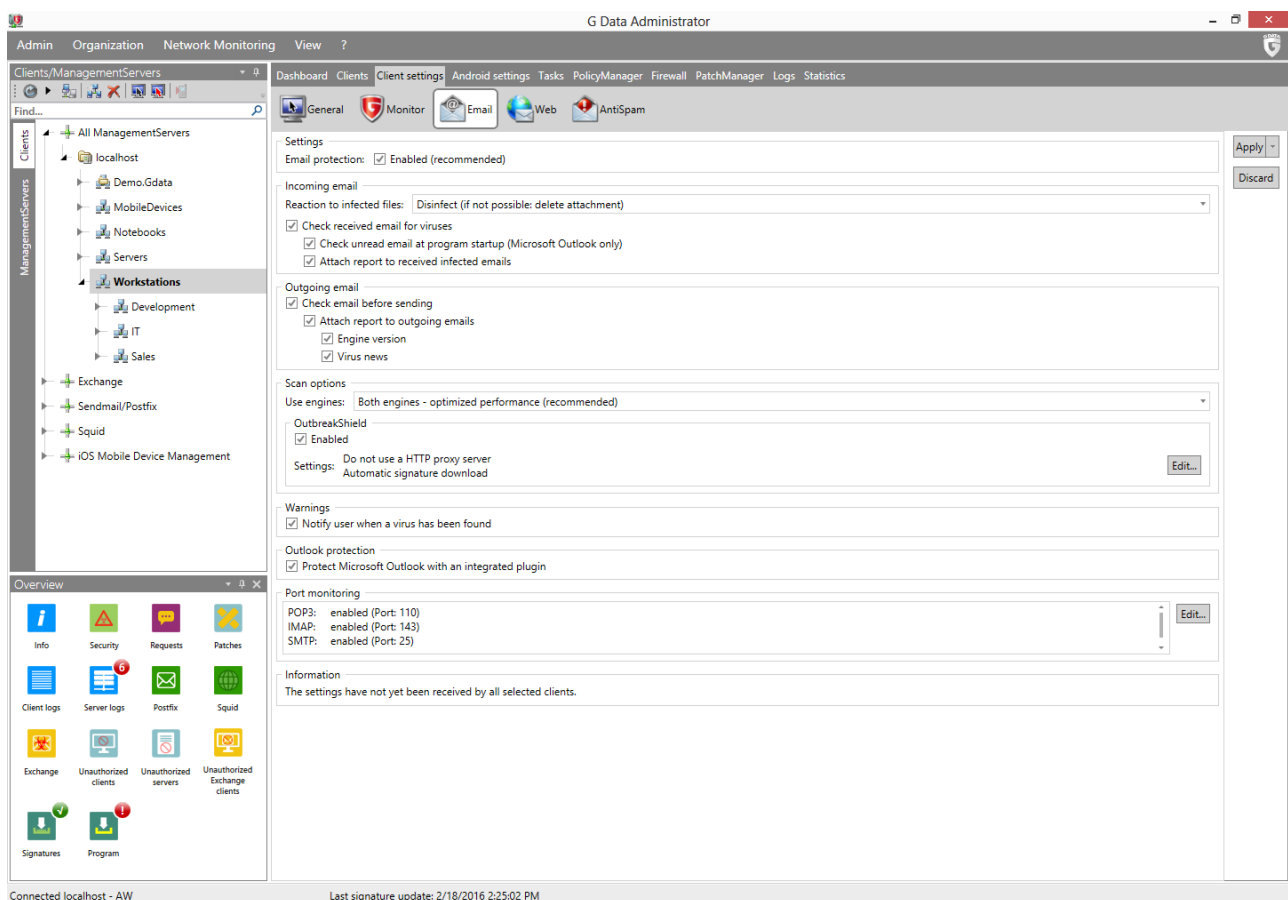


Image 34: G DATA Administrator, Clients settings, Email

8.1.2.2. Outgoing

Outgoing email should be scanned for viruses to avoid unknowingly sending out malware. Optionally, a report can be attached to outgoing emails, indicating that the message has been scanned. This provides recipients with a confirmation that the email message is indeed safe.

8.2. Monitor

The Monitor category represents the final security layer. It is layered in itself, providing security based on file system scans and behavior monitoring, as well as specific protection against banking Trojans and malicious USB devices.

8.2.1. File system

Whenever files are written to or read from the local file system, the file system monitor kicks in. First, the monitor uses one or two scan engines to scan the file and compare it against the locally saved virus signatures. Known malware will be recognized, at which point the monitor will execute the configured action (such as disinfecting, quarantining or removing the file). If a file is not recognized as malware after comparing it to virus signatures, it will be scanned using heuristic technology. Similar to virus signatures, this approach checks the malware file for patterns commonly exhibited by malware. While heuristics can cause a slightly higher false positive rate, it helps spot malware for which there are no available signatures.

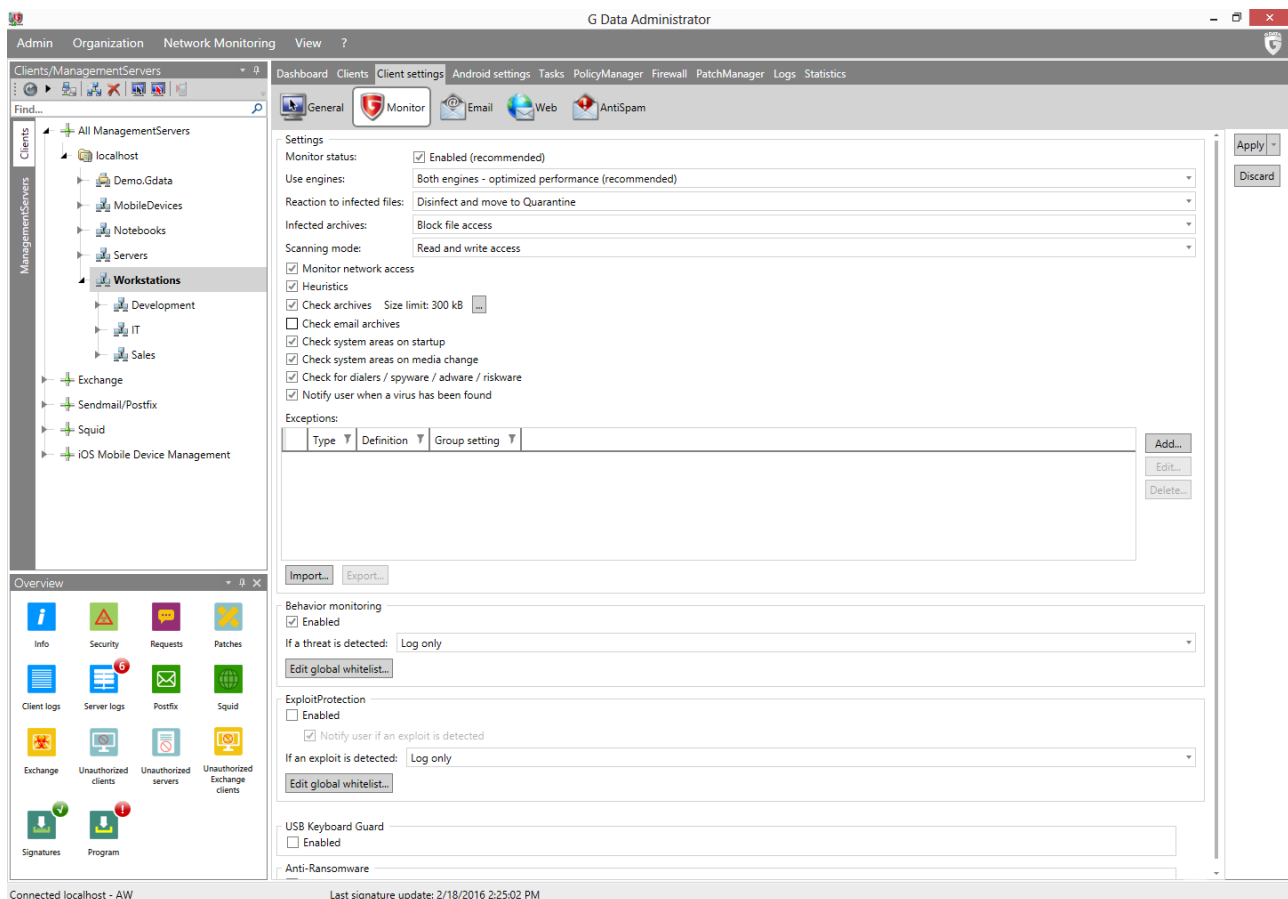


Image 35: G DATA Administrator, Clients settings, Monitor

The CLIENT SETTINGS > MONITOR tab provides access to settings for the file system monitor. By default, it is enabled with a balanced profile, providing security without sacrificing too much performance. Administrators can choose to add more security measures, or to increase performance by disabling some. As with most settings, it is recommended to go for optimal security in all cases, unless performance is severely impacted. The MONITOR STATUS should always be set to ENABLED. Completely

disabling the monitor deactivates one of the central components of the G DATA security solution and should only be considered if an individual client is experiencing extreme compatibility problems, or if it is sufficiently protected by alternative security measures.

The file system monitor uses two software engines to scan files for malware. This offers optimal security, by ensuring that a malware infection that is missed by one engine will be picked up by the other. The default and recommended option is to enable both engines. If performance is less than expected, clients can be configured to scan files with only one of the two engines.

G DATA can take several types of action when a malware-infected file is encountered. The most restrictive setting immediately deletes infected files. This makes sure that malware never has a chance on the system, but causes data loss if important documents are infected or falsely flagged as malware. It is recommended to choose disinfection as the primary action. This will let the file system monitor try to repair infected files, after which it will be quarantined. Alternatively, the file can be quarantined immediately or access can be blocked. While blocking access does prevent the malware from running, it leaves the file untouched. Quarantining the file makes sure it cannot be accidentally run by anyone, while keeping open the option of restoring it or manually repairing it. From the quarantine, administrators can choose to send their file to G DATA for further analysis. The file system monitor can scan the contents of archives (such as ZIP files), but does not remove single infected files from an archive. Archives that contain an infected file can be moved to quarantine as a whole or deleted, or access can be blocked. Because archived files will be scanned once they are extracted or opened, there is a reduced risk when working with infected archives. Instead of deleting the file, blocking access should do. For performance reasons, archive checks can even be disabled altogether. Network access monitoring is enabled by default, but can be disabled if the computer is located in a network where all clients are being protected by G DATA.

The scanning mode decides when the file system monitor will do its work. Files can be scanned on `READ ACCESS`, `ON READ AND WRITE ACCESS`, or `ON EXECUTION`. `ON EXECUTION` will provide the baseline protection of scanning files when they are run. This will prevent malware from infecting the client PC but, like blocking access, does not help against further spreading the malware. To make sure that infected files are detected even when they are not being run, choose `READ ACCESS` or `READ AND WRITE ACCESS`. That way, files that are being copied to or from other folders, disks or clients will also be scanned. This way, malware that is actively spreading itself across the network will be detected when it tries to infect other PCs by writing files to network shares. Scanning for malware on `READ AND WRITE ACCESS` is a hard disk intensive process. If client performance is impacted, the scanning mode can be scaled down to `READ ACCESS`. `ON EXECUTION` should only be used for cases where even read access scans are too system-intensive.

By default, the file system monitor checks archives, email archives and system areas for malware. Due to their file size, archives can be troublesome to scan. A size limit can be defined to prevent the monitor from reducing performance by initiating lengthy on-access archive scans, or archive scans can be disabled altogether. Even when automatic on-access scans for archives are disabled, users will still be able to initiate a manual scan when they encounter a suspicious archive file. When enabling email archive scans, keep in mind that email software will complain if its data file is moved into quarantine. In most cases, it is better to disable email archive scans and let the file system monitor check files once they are extracted from the archive (for example, when saving an attachment to the local hard disk). System areas (such as boot sectors) can be scanned on start up or on media change. This scan should be enabled

in order to detect boot sector viruses. Also enabled by default is the option to search for dialers, spyware, adware and riskware. While not strictly malware, these types of files are generally unwanted.

When the file system monitor detects a threat, it automatically takes the action that has been defined by the administrator. In addition, G DATA Security Client can display a message on the client PC that informs the user that malware has been found. The message contains the file, its path and the name of the malware found. Displaying a warning can help the user realize that the current program that is being executed or website that is being visited is malicious. However, some users may be confused by the message. Messages about threats that have already been blocked are not relevant for all users and can be disabled on an individual basis.

Specific files or folders can be excluded from the file system monitor scans. Using `EXCEPTIONS`, files that are impractical for on-access scans can be ignored. For example, large files that are seldom used do not need to be scanned on-access if they are included in a scheduled scan job (see chapter 9.2.1.3). Similarly, database files can be excluded from the on-access scans if they are regularly scanned by an on-demand scan. It is recommended that not too many exceptions are added. Only files that impede performance when scanned with on-access scans should be defined as an exception, and only if they are periodically scanned by a regular scan job. Files that generate false positives but are known to be safe can be added to the exception list as well, after it has been verified that they are indeed not malicious. When defining exceptions, extra care should be taken that they only apply to those clients or groups that really need the exception. Since an exception prevents files from being scanned for malware by the file system monitor, it can have far-reaching effects and should be limited to as few clients as possible. The exception list can be populated with directory, drive, file and process exceptions. Directories, drives and processes can be manually entered into the text field or selected from a folder tree. Selections can be made from local folders and files or by opening the folder tree on any of the clients in the network. For processes, the full path and file name must be entered in the text field. File exceptions should be entered as a file name and can be defined using wildcard symbols `?` and `*`, representing single characters and entire character strings, respectively.

8.2.2. Behavior monitoring

Behavior monitoring takes the heuristic approach one step further. While files are being executed, it tracks every action. If the file exhibits behavior that is common to malware, such as excessive write access to the registry or creating auto-start entries, it can be blocked from executing. Additionally, it can be moved to quarantine. If the behavior monitor causes any false positives, a whitelist entry can be added by selecting the relevant report in the `SECURITY EVENTS` module.

8.2.3. ExploitProtection

Exploits specifically look for vulnerabilities in third party software on the client. ExploitProtection constantly checks the behavior of the installed software for irregularities. If any unusual behavior is detected in a software process, it can be just logged or also blocked. The recommended setting is to block suspicious processes. Whenever ExploitProtection carries out an action, a report is added to the `SECURITY EVENTS` module. If a program has falsely been identified as a threat, the corresponding report can be used to create a whitelist entry.

8.2.4. BankGuard

A more specific form of behavior monitoring is BankGuard (available on the WEB tab). It monitors browser system files for Microsoft Internet Explorer, Mozilla Firefox and Google Chrome, and protects against malware that tries to manipulate internet banking websites.

8.2.5. Anti-Ransomware

Whereas regular malware infects devices to use them as part of a botnet or to steal credit card information, ransomware developers try to make money by extorting the user directly. In order to extract a ransom, ransomware locks the device or even encrypts data until the victim pays up. In addition to signature- and behavior-based detection, the Anti-Ransomware function detects the specific actions of ransomware, such as file encryption, and blocks them before it can do any more harm.

If Anti-Ransomware is enabled, every threat will be logged and a report will be sent to the ManagementServer. Depending on the settings under CLIENT SETTINGS > MONITOR, G DATA Security Client will only log the threat or block its execution and move it to the quarantine. Optionally, users can be notified if a threat is detected. In case of false positives, an entry can be added to the whitelist.

8.2.6. USB Keyboard Guard

USB Keyboard Guard protects clients against BadUSB attacks. Maliciously reprogrammed USB devices, such as cameras, USB sticks or printers, can act as keyboards when they are plugged in to a computer. To prevent those devices from automatically carrying out unauthorized commands, USB Keyboard Guard will ask the user for confirmation if it detects a USB device that identifies itself as a keyboard. If the user indeed plugged in a keyboard, it can be safely authorized. If the device identifies itself as a keyboard but the user plugged in something else, it should not be authorized, as it may be malicious. Regardless of the user's decision, a report will be added to the SECURITY EVENTS module. If a device has been authorized, the administrator can decide to block it nonetheless by right-clicking on the report and revoking the authorization.

USB Keyboard Guard should be enabled in order to offer users optimal protection against malicious USB devices. Unlike other protection measures, it does not function completely transparently, because the end user needs to provide confirmation if an inserted USB device identifies itself as a keyboard. However, administrators still have full control through the reports that are generated whenever a user authorizes or blocks a device.

8.3. Performance

Client hardware and software, as well as network infrastructure, provide only finite capacity. Traditionally, information security has always had to be established at the expense of performance. The more security measures that had to be implemented, the more performance impact could be measured. For most modern client-server security solutions, therefore, performance is a key factor. G DATA offers optimized security modules that hardly affect client performance, even when configured for optimal security. Different circumstances, such as hardware specifications or software deployments, can require a different balance between security and speed. Having built a network according to defined network

zones and client roles (see chapter 1.1) helps decide which clients need more security and which clients can focus on performance. Finding the correct balance is difficult: for some enterprise networks, as many security layers as physically possible should be enabled; for others, client speed is more important. The advantage of the multi-layered approach that G DATA offers is that the security functions can be optimized for each client. Several options complement each other, allowing one or two to be disabled without affecting performance.

In general, it is recommended to err on the side of caution and think twice before disabling a security feature for performance reasons. When deploying a security solution, start with the maximum level of security that is appropriate for that client, and reduce the security level only if the client is noticeably impacted. Some of the security settings impact performance more than others. The file system monitor can be demanding if the client is mainly used for file operations. Settings like archive scanning can delay the processing of large files, while read and write access scanning can cause significant slowdowns for mechanical hard drives. Clients with a low-end CPU can experience lag when using both scan engines – disabling one of them will significantly increase performance. Other file monitor settings, such as heuristics, or behavior monitoring, only minimally impact client performance.

Usability is impacted by other factors than performance alone. Security software always has a small risk of identifying regular files as malware, based on patterns in the heuristics module or behavior monitoring. If protection has been configured too tightly, more false positives will emerge, but if security is lax, malware may slip through unnoticed. As with performance problems, false positives should only be remedied if they are actually occurring. If a file is identified as malware, the SECURITY EVENTS section of G DATA Administrator will show on which client it was detected and by which protection module. Administrators can choose to change settings of the relevant module to be generally less strict, or whitelist the specific file (if the security module supports this measure). Because generally lowering security might put clients at risk, at first the affected file should be whitelisted only. This prevents it from being detected as malware and removed or quarantined. If a specific security module often wrongly identifies malicious files, it can be configured for lower security. Completely turning off a module should only be a last resort. In most cases, quarantining a file instead of deleting it, or logging an infection instead of directly acting upon it will do. However, these cases do require administrative attention. If G DATA is configured not to take care of an infection automatically, manual investigation will be necessary. Alerts can help notifying administrators of such cases (see chapter 6.2). If relaxing security module restrictions is not an option, for example when a specific group of clients requires absolute security, PolicyManager can help restricting access to applications, devices or websites (see chapter 14).

8.4. Operating system security

While security software significantly reduces the chance of malware infections, additional measures can be configured on the operating system level. Some aspects of both network security and local operating system security can be efficiently controlled using local settings or network-based group policies. Administrators can choose to enforce these settings on all clients, or to protect only the most vulnerable network zones and client roles.

By default, Windows is configured to run many background services, essential and non-essential. Some support important Windows functions, others are only used for very specific configurations or software suites. Every service, however, can be an attack vector. Attackers are constantly looking for

vulnerabilities in Windows services to exploit a security hole and gain access. Patching the affected services helps, but can only be done as soon as Microsoft or the software vendor locates the security hole and issues a patch. Unused services can be disabled in advance, thus taking away the possibility that a vulnerability is abused by hackers. Furthermore, disabling services can lead to performance increases. Running the command **services.msc** on a Windows PC will open the SERVICES manager that displays all services that have been installed on the system, whether enabled and running or not. Disabling services is not a quick win measure; before disabling any service, administrators should make sure that the client PCs in question do not depend on it.

To decrease the risk of malware spreading via removable media (such as USB sticks or CD-ROMs), Microsoft has replaced autoplay in recent versions of its operating system with a window that allows the end user to pick a specific action to be taken, such as opening the medium's root folder or importing data from it. This circumvents the often-used autorun.inf configuration file. While this effectively stops malware that spreads itself through autorun.inf configuration, users can override it. In the window that pops up whenever a removable medium is inserted, users can select a default action which will be carried out each time a medium of that type is inserted. If an infected USB stick is inserted into the computer at a later stage, it will be run just like any other medium. With a security solution installed, even if malware is run it will not cause any damage. However, for PCs in corporate networks, disabling autoplay completely will increase security. For smaller networks, using local registry settings to disable autoplay can be practical: using the Registry Editor, add a DWORD value named **NoDriveTypeAutoRun** with hexadecimal value **0xFF** to the key

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Policies\Explorer to disable autoplay for all types of drives. Alternatively, a hotfix is available from Microsoft to change the setting automatically¹⁰. For corporate networks, a group policy is available to disable autoplay for specific machines or users.

Downloaded files and email attachments are another common source of infections. For this reason, browsers and email clients usually warn end users before downloading any files. This helps educate about the risks of downloading files from public sources, in theory. In practice, the messages are often dismissed without having been read. Security solutions pick up on malware long before the file hits the hard drive (through web protection, blacklisting and other solutions), and even if it does, the file system monitor will recognize and block it. Still, some administrators may want to rule out the risk of malware even being pulled in by a client browser. Using Security Zones, file downloads can be blocked across all browsers that support the built-in Windows technology Windows Attachment Manager (Microsoft Internet Explorer, Google Chrome). Administrators can configure URL actions to be disallowed in certain security zones, such as executing a download¹¹. Other browsers possibly ignore zone settings. In that case, limiting file save access can help, as well as enabling User Account Control or an appropriate group policy.

Other basic security musts include limiting the permission level for end users to the lowest level possible. When an end user does not need advanced system permissions to perform tasks on the client PC, these permissions should not be granted, to prevent them from being abused by malware. This includes not letting any end user log on to a client PC using an administrator account, and using group policies to

¹⁰ See <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/967715>.

¹¹ See <http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/ms537183.aspx>.

restrict access to local and network resources. Blocks for other actions, such as viewing removable media, or using certain applications, can easily be configured using G DATA's PolicyManager module (see chapter 14).

There is no one-size-fits-all solution where local security settings are concerned. Each network zone will have different demands for its client PCs, and each individual user may need further changes to security policies. A good starting point for networks that are using Active Directory is to explore the possibilities of group policies. This built-in feature allows administrators to configure extensive rules for the use of local and network resources and for managing permissions. For networks that are not using Active Directory, many settings can be adjusted locally.

8.5. Web proxy protection

Real-time protection is not limited to client-side security modules. Internet traffic can be scanned before even reaching the client. In order to do so, G DATA offers a security plugin for the popular web proxy server Squid. The Linux Web Security Gateway module is available as an optional module.

Linux Web Security Gateway is installed as part of G DATA Security Client for Linux (see chapter 4.8.3) and after installation automatically connects to its governing ManagementServer. The settings can be managed in G DATA Administrator through the SQUID module. By activating the antivirus protection, all web traffic that passed the Squid proxy is scanned for viruses. This is the recommend setting, providing a baseline protection. By enabling the AntiPhishing option, cloud lookups are made as an additional check whether traffic is suspicious. By checking CREATE REPORTS, a report is added to the SECURITY EVENTS module each time a virus is found. This option should be enabled, but can be disabled if it turns out to generate too many incidents that do not need any action to be taken.

A more fine-grained control mechanism is the use of the blacklist option. Instead of blocking only virus-infected traffic, administrators can choose to add specific web domains, client IP addresses or MIME types to the blacklist. One scenario is blocking specific websites network-wide, with a similar effect to the client-side PolicyManager module WEB CONTENT CONTROL (see chapter 14.3). The MIME type option, however, even allows for blocking specific file types, such as ZIP archives (by entering **application/zip**)¹². Such protection measures are far-reaching and cannot be applied in every scenario, but are able to provide a layer of security to network clients that might otherwise not be protected.

¹² A full list of MIME types can be found at <https://www.sitepoint.com/web-foundations/mime-types-complete-list/>.

9. On demand protection

In addition to real time protection, client PCs can also be protected on demand. On demand scans are carried out once or periodically and check a predefined area on the client PC for malware. On demand protection should be configured in addition to real time protection, as the latter type does not scan files that are not being accessed at that time. On demand scans detect malware in all files on the client PC, regardless of whether there is current read or write access. By planning a recurring on demand scan for a client PC, its entire hard disk can be scanned to check if malware has infected otherwise dormant files. Two types of on demand scans can be planned using G DATA software: idle scan or a single or periodic scan job. The idle scan is the recommended type of on demand protection, as it does not need to be scheduled: it automatically scans clients whenever they are not in use. Alternatively, scan jobs can be used to scan clients at a predefined moment in time.

9.1. Idle scan

A traditional full scan job, planned at a specific time of the day, requires a significant amount of computer resources, making it impractical to run a scan while an end user is logged on. Scheduling a full scan during off-peak hours prevents productivity interruptions, but requires the client to be powered on. Configuring the idle scan functionality provides an ideal solution: when the client is powered on but not in use, G DATA Security Client starts an automatic scan in the background. It will scan predefined drives, files and folders and automatically pause when the user returns to the client. This provides the functionality and level of security of a regular scan but prevents the performance loss that can accompany it.

For clients that are not always connected to the company network, idle scan can be a replacement for scheduled scans. A laptop that connects to the network after having been disconnected for a longer time will receive newly planned scan jobs and immediately execute them if they are overdue, which can lead to reduced performance. Enabling idle scan for clients like these, and disabling the scheduled full scan, will make sure that they receive full protection while avoiding being overburdened at startup.

To determine whether the client is idle, the G DATA Security Client tray icon needs to be enabled for all sessions. Idle state is determined by several parameters. The scan will only be started if the end user has not been using the client for at least one minute, and never in the first ten minutes after the client has been powered on. If the user is not at the PC, but other background tasks generate CPU or I/O activity, the idle scan will be paused. Furthermore, scheduled jobs will be carried out before the idle scan can commence. If the idle scan is running, but any of the parameters change (e.g. when the user returns to the client, or a scheduled job starts), the idle scan will be paused. When the parameters are met next time, it will pick up where it left off. For the end user, an idle scan will work just like any other scheduled scan. It does its work in the background, and notifies the user if malware is found (if this setting has been enabled by the administrator). For administrators, an idle scan will not generate a regular report, but any malware will be reported in the SECURITY EVENTS module as usual. After the idle scan has completed one full run of scanning the specified folders, it will automatically start anew after seven days.

Idle scan can be enabled on the GENERAL tab of the CLIENT SETTINGS module. As with other settings, it can be enabled or disabled per client. It is recommended to enable idle scan for all network clients, disabling it only if it leads to performance issues or other problems. The analysis scope can be defined per client and

ranges from all local hard drives to individual folders. For high-risk clients, idle scan can be configured to monitor sensitive folders. Alternatively, it can partly take over the tasks of the full scan, and scan all local hard drives. The scan settings for the idle scan are identical to the monitor's scan settings and will be taken from the MONITOR tab. This concerns the engine settings, REACTION TO INFECTED FILES, INFECTED ARCHIVES, and SCANNING MODE, as well as the scanner specifics MONITOR NETWORK ACCESS, HEURISTICS, ARCHIVES, CHECK EMAIL ARCHIVES, CHECK SYSTEM AREAS, CHECK FOR DIALERS, and NOTIFY USER WHEN A VIRUS HAS BEEN FOUND. Since the idle scan is a special kind of scan job, the exceptions for the idle scan are taken from the scan job exceptions list on the GENERAL tab.

9.2. Scan jobs

Scheduled on demand protection is carried out in the form of single or periodic scan jobs. Single scan jobs are run one time only, while periodic scan jobs are repeated according to a schedule. Both types of jobs can be planned and managed from the TASKS module. As with other modules of G DATA Administrator, the jobs that are planned apply to the client or group selected in the CLIENTS view. The module shows a list of currently defined jobs. By default, all types of jobs are shown, including backup jobs, PatchManager jobs, etcetera. For each job, several properties are listed. For client jobs, the client for which they have been defined is displayed (for groups, the group name). The STATUS column shows the current status of the job. For group jobs, the status can be checked per client by selecting the appropriate client on the left. If a scan job has been run at least once, the job listing can be expanded to show the associated scan log(s). Double click on the log to view a detailed list of job results. The INTERVAL column displays the defined scan interval, such as ONCE for a single scan job, or DAILY for a periodic scan job that runs every day. Finally, the SCOPE displays the analysis scope that has been defined for the job.

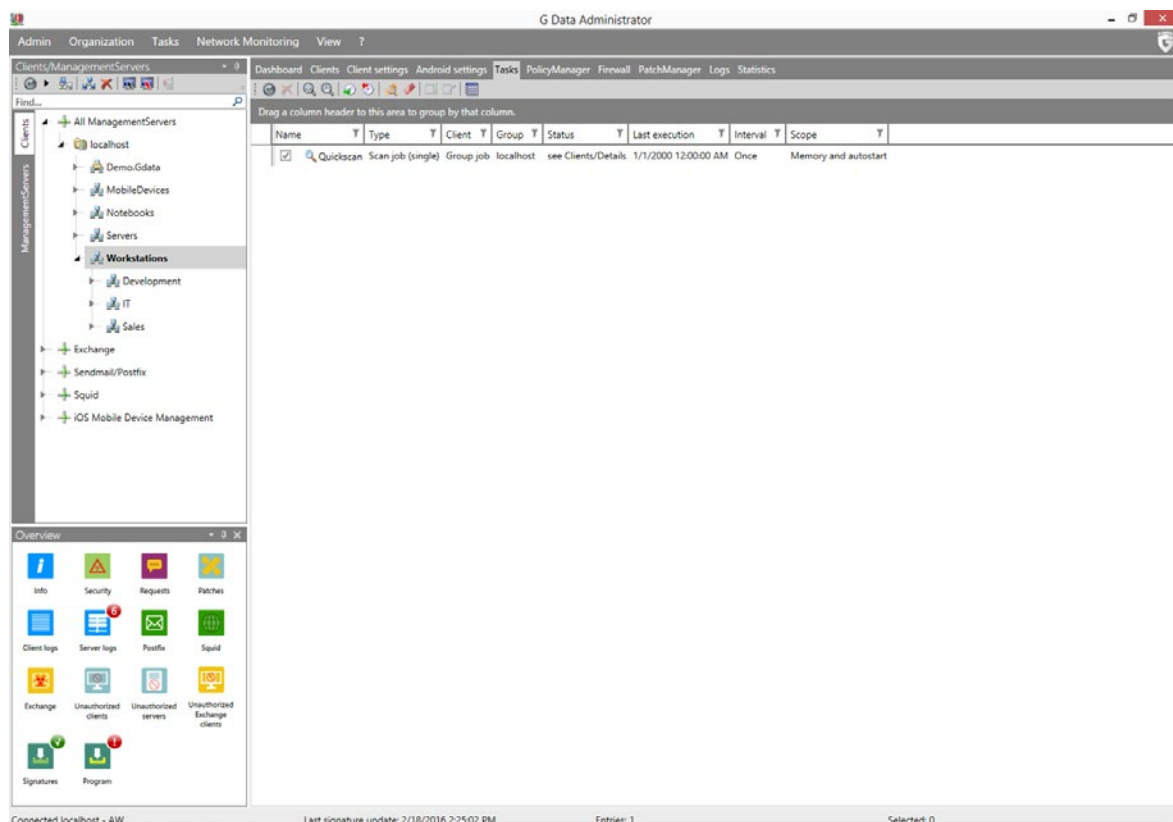


Image 36: G DATA Administrator, Tasks

Single and periodic scan jobs can be defined by clicking the respective buttons on the task bar, or by opening the **TASKS** menu and choosing **ADD > SINGLE SCAN JOB** or **PERIODIC SCAN JOB** (see chapters 9.2.1 and 9.2.2 for more information about scheduling scan jobs). After defining the job, it will immediately show up in the **TASKS** list. The **STATUS** column will show its current status. Once the job has been executed at least once, the date and time of its last run will be displayed, as well as a scan log (accessible by clicking the plus icon in the leftmost column). If any malware is found during a scheduled scan, the action that has been defined when setting up the job will be automatically carried out. The scan log will show an entry about the infection, and a report will be added to the **SECURITY EVENTS** module (see chapter 6.2).

For both single and periodic scan jobs, some general options can be set on the **JOB SCHEDULING** tab of the scan job window. End users can be allowed to pause or cancel a scan job. In cases where a scheduled scan might interrupt end users' work, pausing a scan will allow them to continue working without a performance hit. This option should be used with care: system security can be compromised if an end user decides to cancel an essential scheduled scan. End users can be notified when a virus is found during a scheduled scan. While this can be a useful option for file system monitor scans (see chapter 8.2.1), the end user does typically not need to be notified during a scheduled scan, because the scanner takes care of the infected file automatically and the infection will be reported in G DATA Administrator's **SECURITY EVENTS** module. During the scan, G DATA Security Client can report its progress to the ManagementServer every two minutes (updating the details of the scan job in the **TASKS** module). This can be valuable for the administrator to keep an eye on the exact progress of a scan, but is rarely useful for recurring scans. Only if a one-time scan is executed immediately, keeping track of its findings directly can be necessary. Clients can be shut down automatically after a scan job is completed. However, to prevent data loss or otherwise unexpected behavior, an automatic shutdown is not possible when an end user is logged on to the client when the scan is completed. Automatic shutdown is useful mostly if scans are scheduled after a regular work day or on weekends, when the clients are not scheduled to be used directly after the scan. Periodic scan jobs can be delayed if the client is not powered on at the scheduled time. By selecting this option, it is ensured that no jobs are being skipped. By skipping a job, an infected file may persist on the system until the next scan, possibly being further distributed to other systems. This option should only be disabled for jobs that are run regularly, so that the next job will be carried out relatively soon after the skipped job. If the scan job includes one or more network shares, they should be entered as a UNC path instead of using mapped network drives. If the client's machine account (e.g. Client001\$) has no permissions to access a share, enter a **USER NAME** and **PASSWORD** for an account with the appropriate permissions under **USER CONTEXT (OPTIONAL)**.

9.2.1. Periodic scan jobs

Before planning any periodic scan jobs, it is recommended to think of the scan schedule as whole. Every network client should be scanned regularly, but planning one single scan job including every PC in the network does not provide optimal security. For example, scheduled scans for servers should be different from those used for clients, and different client roles can require different scan settings. Multiple scan jobs can be planned for the same client: for example, a daily quick scan and a weekly full scan. As a whole, the scan schedule should ensure that none of the clients go without scan for a longer amount of time. As addition to real time protection, regularly executed scan jobs will ensure that client PCs are completely malware-free. However, scan jobs can cause performance hits, depending on the number of files that needs to be scanned. A daily scan of the complete hard drive is therefore not recommended: it

may take a long time and requires CPU power and semi-constant hard drive access. For most client PCs, the idle scan (see chapter 9.1) is the best option. If the idle scan is not being used, a weekly full scan and daily quick scan, combined with real time client protection, will find and remedy malware infections. For client PCs that have a higher risk of malware infection, for example clients that are used to download content from the internet, a full scan can be scheduled more often, if client performance permits. Servers, such as file or database servers, may be under a significant load, leaving hardly any CPU cycles for a malware scan. For that type of machines, it may be necessary to schedule scans during off-peak times or preset maintenance windows.

For almost every enterprise network, several scan jobs should be configured. All of them should recur periodically, optionally supplemented by one-time scans to cover exceptions or acute cases. The following paragraphs will define several types of periodic scan jobs that can serve as templates for the specific needs of an enterprise network. There is no one size fits all solution. Adapt the settings to the enterprise network, down to network zone and individual client levels, if necessary. After the job has run a few times, check to see if it produces the expected results and does not impact client performance too much.

9.2.1.1. Full scan

The first and arguably most important type of periodic scans is the full scan. In addition to real time protection, each network client should be scanned regularly by a scheduled scan job. A full scan picks up malware that is not being detected by the real time client protection. While a file system monitor detects all malware that is being read, written or executed, it does not proactively scan files that have been saved to the hard drive. If a file has been written to the hard drive while the monitor was not (yet) enabled, the file system monitor will only detect it once the system attempts to open or run it. Because it scans the complete hard drive, a full scan will detect malware before the system tries to execute it. The more often a full scan is carried out, the higher the level of security and certainty that no infected files are located on the system. However, because it scans all files on the system's hard drive(s), a full scan is very performance-intensive. On most systems, running applications will slow down and end user work will be impacted. For performance reasons, a daily full scan in most cases will not be an option. Low- and medium-risk clients can be set to be scanned weekly, after work hours or during the weekend. High-risk clients could be scanned more often, but ideally only when the machine is not in use. Servers should be scheduled for full scans as well – if performance is an issue, a full scan can be planned during a server's regular maintenance window.

A full scan can be defined as a periodic scan job in G DATA Administrator's TASKS module. Make sure that the appropriate client or group for the scan is selected in the CLIENTS view. The PERIODIC SCAN JOB window opens on the JOB SCHEDULING tab. Select the day and time at which the scan should be run for the selected client(s). Since a full scan requires resources and can take a considerable amount of time, make sure to plan the job so that it does not overlap with other tasks (periodic or single scan jobs, backups or PatchManager tasks). The SCANNER tab defines the parameters with which the scan job will be carried out. Because a full scan already requires significant client resources to be available, and should always be run while the client is not in use, the scan settings do not have to be tweaked for performance. However, settings should still be optimized for the client(s) that the job is planned for. The safest scan engine option is to use both scan engines. Even if it impacts client performance during the full scan, using both

engines is recommended: it provides optimal malware recognition. Which action is to be taken when an infected file is found depends on the administrator's preferences. Generally, disinfection is recommended, with the file being moved to quarantine if disinfection is not possible. This will prevent false positives from being deleted immediately and allows administrators to further examine files in the quarantine. Infected (email) archives can be moved to the quarantine as well, but require more attention. Even if only one file or email within an archive is infected, the complete archive will be moved. Files that have not been infected but have been archived together with an infected one will be quarantined too. Deleting the complete archive is an even more drastic option, and not recommended. Infected archives can be logged, in which case the administrator should make sure to check the SECURITY EVENTS module regularly. All files should be scanned; changing the file types to be scanned to ONLY PROGRAM FILES AND DOCUMENTS will disregard potentially infected files. Scanner priority can be set to High if the client will not be used during the scan; the scan time will be significantly reduced. Otherwise, the Medium or Low settings should be used. The specific checks, such as HEURISTICS, EMAIL ARCHIVES, SYSTEM AREAS, dialers, and rootkits, should all be enabled to ensure maximum protection. Archives can be included in the scan, but since they are often relatively immutable, they could be covered by less frequent periodic scan (see chapter 9.2.1.3).

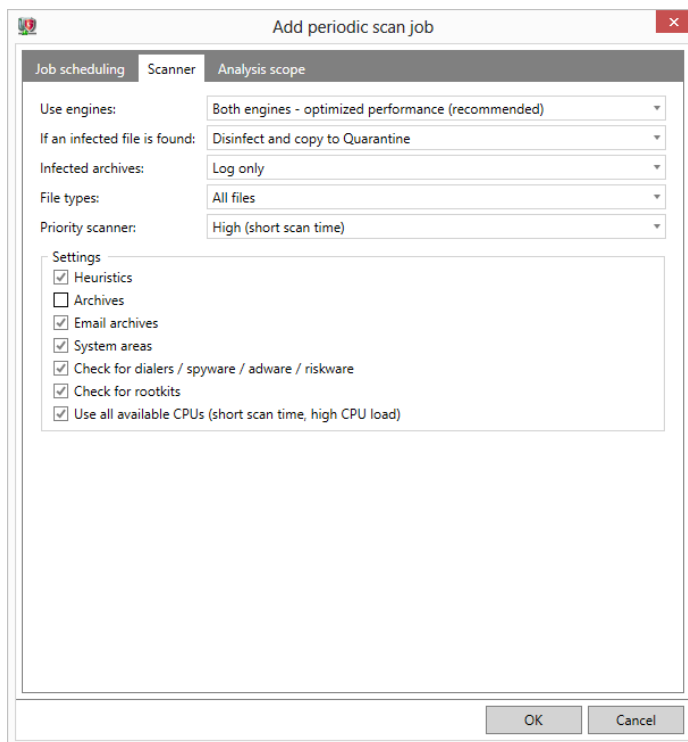


Image 37: G DATA Administrator, Tasks, New periodic scan job (Full scan)

The analysis scope for a full scan should include all hard drives. By selecting CHECK THE FOLLOWING DIRECTORIES, administrators can select one or more folders that should be scanned, allowing for a more granular control over the folders to be included in the full scan. While this option can be used to exclude folders that should not be scanned, it is recommended to leave CHECK LOCAL HARD DRIVES selected and define eventual exceptions using the CLIENT SETTINGS module (see chapter 9.3). The full hard drive scan includes a memory and autostart scan. Since full scans are often not executed on a daily basis, it is recommended to define an additional memory and autostart scan, which can be run more often than the full scan (see chapter 9.2.1.3).

9.2.1.2. Quick scan

The second type of recurring scan job is the quick file scan. This scan job should be configured to run daily for all clients in the network. Servers can be included in the job as well, but only if there are enough resources available to run the scan. A quick scan checks the files with the highest risk of infection, skipping files that cannot be executed (and thus cannot possibly infect the client). Reducing the number of files to be scanned significantly reduces the amount of time needed for the scan, while retaining a proper level of security. Like the full scan, a quick scan can be configured by choosing PERIODIC SCAN JOB. A quick scan should run daily (weekends can be omitted for clients that are only powered on and in use during the week). The time at which the job should be run can be freely defined. Quick scans are more lightweight than full scans, but can still cause a performance hit (depending on the settings on the SCANNER tab). Planning a scan during lunch time is a possibility, or after the typical office hours (if the clients are not powered down). Depending on the client hardware configuration and quick scan settings, a typical end user may not notice any reduced performance, allowing a scheduled scan time at any point during the day.

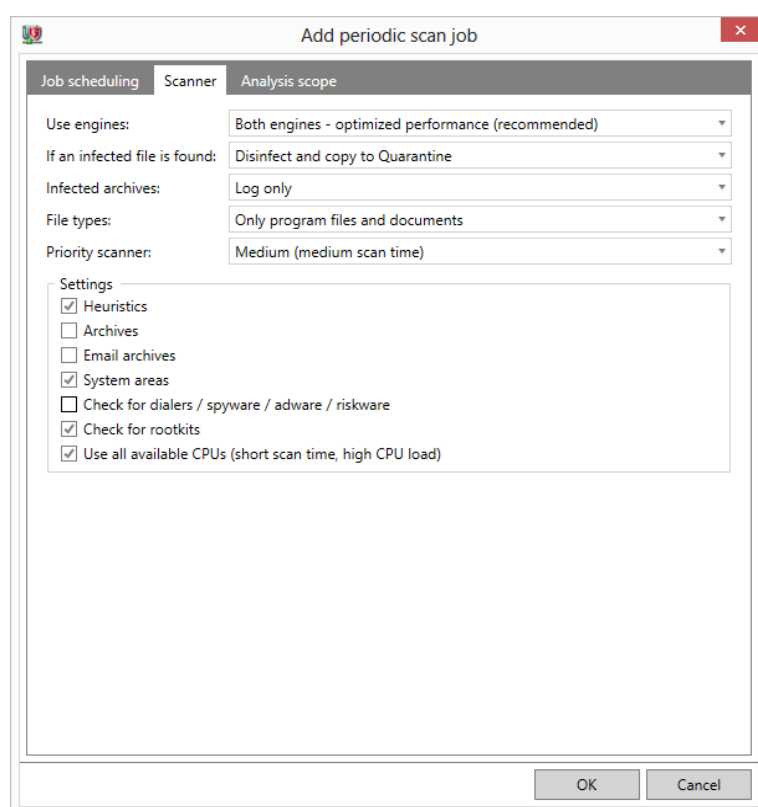


Image 38: G DATA Administrator, Tasks, New periodic scan job (Quick scan)

The SCANNER tab configures the types of malware scans to carry out. For a quick scan job, these settings will mostly depend on the required speed. A quick scan is meant to be a light-weight daily scan that checks executables for malware, and does not burden the client too much. For optimal detection it is recommended to use both scan engines. If a client's hardware or software configuration causes performance problems during the quick scan, scans can be carried out using only one engine, but this will reduce the detection rate slightly. Like a full scan, the action to be taken if an infected file is found can be set according to the administrator's preferences: disinfect/log is the recommended option. For a quick scan, set the FILE TYPES to include ONLY PROGRAM FILES AND DOCUMENTS. This will scan only those files that

can actually infect the system by being executed or opened. Other files will be ignored, saving time. Scanner priority depends on the resources that are available to the scanning process. If the quick scan will be run while an end user is likely to be working at the client, a medium or low priority should be set to allow for normal performance. Using this setting, however, the scan will take longer to complete. For the quickest result, the priority can be set to High, but this will impede performance. Similarly, the `USE ALL AVAILABLE CPUS` option can speed up the scan, but might cause a significant performance drop. Enable the `HEURISTICS` setting to carry out the scan using pattern technology to recognize malware patterns. For a quick scan, `ARCHIVES` can be ignored by deselecting the checkbox: since they cannot be executed, they do not need to be scanned in a quick scan. The same goes for `EMAIL ARCHIVES`. Note that in both cases, clients should have the file system monitor enabled, to make sure that malware contained within archives is blocked as soon as it is extracted. `SYSTEM AREAS` should be scanned during a quick scan and `CHECK FOR ROOTKITS` should also be enabled. Both options are not very performance- and time-intensive, yet scan important parts of the client system. Finally, the dialers/spyware/adware/riskware scan can be enabled if they are considered malware by the administrator, or disabled to save (some) time.

For a quick scan, the analysis scope should include all client files. Select `CHECK LOCAL HARD DRIVES` to run the scan job on the complete hard drive. It is possible to limit a quick scan to pre-defined folders, such as the Program Files folder or the Windows system folder. This will reduce the time needed to complete the scan, but represents a security risk, since malware executables can be stored in any folder – in fact, many varieties try to avoid detection by using uncommon folders.

9.2.1.3. Other periodic scans

In addition to the typical full and quick scans, there are several other types of common scans. Most importantly, administrators should plan a memory and autostart scan. This will check the often-targeted Windows autostart areas and the currently running programs in memory. It is a relatively lightweight measure that can be planned for all network clients by defining a new periodic scan job with the `ANALYSIS SCOPE` set to `CHECK MEMORY AND AUTOSTART`. Typically, a memory and autostart scan is run on system startup, but it can be planned as an hourly or daily job as well. System startup is a good moment for other lightweight scans. Large scan jobs should be avoided: systems are usually powered on by an end user, and should be ready for work as soon as possible. Delaying startup with a malware scan is often not acceptable. However, if a client has high-risk files or folders set that should be scanned regularly, scheduling a job that will check the files after startup, before they are being used, can provide additional security.

Periodic scans can be used to pick up file types or folders that are not scanned by the regular quick or full scans. Large archive files, for example, are typically large and not altered very often. Even if an archive contains an infected file, the client will still be secure: as long as the file system monitor is enabled, the file in the archive will be blocked once it is extracted. Because of the various protection layers, archive files can be excluded from the regular full scan to save time. A separate periodic scan can be scheduled to scan archives. Whereas the full scan would typically occur weekly, an archive scan could be planned to be carried out only every second week, or once per month. Alternatively, periodic scans can be scheduled in between full or quick scans, to check a specific folder for malware. Especially high-risk clients can profit from an extra scan (or an increased scan frequency for the regular full scan).

9.2.2. Single scan jobs

Scans can be scheduled to occur only once. Unlike periodic scans, these single scan jobs are carried out once, after which a report is saved and the job will not be repeated. Single scans can be a powerful tool for administrators that are locating or cleaning up malware. When acting on a malware infection report (see chapter 10), a single scan job for a specific folder can help quickly check whether a malware infection has been completely remediated. In case of a remediated infection, a single scan job of a client's memory and autostart helps ensure there are no traces left.

Like periodic scan jobs, single scans can be easily managed from G DATA Administrator's **TASKS** module. The **JOB SCHEDULING** settings are slightly simpler than those for periodic scans. Single scan jobs can be defined in advance, with or without a starting time, and run directly when required. If no time is indicated, the job will not be scheduled for a specific time, but it will be shown in the **TASKS** overview. By selecting the job and clicking the toolbar button **RUN NOW**, it can be executed at any moment. Under **SETTINGS**, the administrator can define several scan parameters. End users can be allowed to halt or cancel the scan job. While this can be useful in case of longer jobs, the nature of the single scan job usually means it should be finished as soon as possible, without any possible user interruption. Similarly, notifying the end user when a virus has been found is often not necessary: when the administrator is monitoring the job, possible malware infections will be quickly acted upon. Optionally, the client can be powered down once the scan job is completed. When further actions are required after the scan, a shutdown is impractical; only if the scan will run as its last task of the day, a client can be shut down automatically. Finally, the client should report its scan progress regularly to the ManagementServer, so the administrator can closely track it.

The **SCANNER SETTINGS** of a single scan job should be tailored to the circumstances. Since detection should be optimal, in most cases both scan engines should be used, as well as heuristics and rootkit checks. The types of files and areas that should be scanned depend on the location of the (possible) infection: all files, program files and documents, archives, email archives, system areas: include all locations that can possibly be infected. In some cases, it might be most practical to select an existing full scan job for the affected client(s) and click **RUN NOW** to run it outside of its schedule. A full hard drive scan is most secure, but may duplicate effort of the full scan. In any case, a memory and autostart scan should be carried out to see if any traces of the malware remain in memory.

9.3. Exceptions

There are many reasons to exclude files or folders from on-demand and idle scans¹³. Some files may be wrongly recognized as malware, requiring an exception. A quick scan will, by default, exclude many file types and possibly even low-risk folders. A full scan may exclude archive or database files that will be scanned in a separate scan job. Performance, time, or false positives can all be valid reasons for defining an exception. However, care should be taken when deciding to exclude hard drives, folders, files or file types from a scan job. Almost all file types can potentially contain malware. Every file on each hard drive should be included in at least one periodic scan job, whether it is a quick scan, a full scan or a custom scan job. At the same time, scanning a file more than once between different jobs is not always useful.

¹³ For more information about excluding files from real time scans, see chapter 8.2.1.

Alternating periodic scan jobs can pick up on the same file more than once, but having large sections of a client's hard drives scanned multiple times is unnecessary.

As with all settings, exceptions apply to the client or group that has been selected in the `CLIENTS` view. It has to be carefully considered for which clients and on which tab exceptions are defined, because that defines the exception scope. Exceptions should be defined for a group that is as small as possible: adding an exception on a client that does not need it opens a window for malware infections. Folders and drives can be defined as an exception that is valid for a specific job only by creating a scan job that do not include them in the analysis scope. Folders that only contain files that do not need to be scanned, can be left out of the regular quick or full scan, but should still be scheduled in a biweekly or monthly job. Alternatively, the exception list on the `GENERAL` tab allows administrators to define file types and folders as global exceptions, which will not be included in any job or in the Idle scan. Because exceptions defined on this list are very wide-reaching, they should only be added in case of a serious problem, such as an essential file being falsely recognized as malware.

9.4. Local scan jobs

On demand protection is not only available as a centrally managed measure. In many circumstances, it can be useful to let end users carry out local scan jobs. Although the centrally configured Monitor already scans files and takes care of any possible infections, users that are expected to work with documents from unverified sources (such as internet downloads or files from removable devices) can use local scans for an extra verification of file safety. Permission to start local scan jobs can be granted through the `CLIENT FUNCTIONS` settings (see chapter 7.4).

For Windows users, a local scan job can be started by right-clicking on the system tray icon of G DATA Security Client, then choosing the appropriate scan target from the `VIRUS CHECK` menu. When using G DATA Security Client for Linux or Mac, open the interface by clicking the G DATA icon and select one of the scan targets under `VIRUS CHECK`. Alternatively, when using Linux, use the command line tool `gdavclient-cli` to perform a scan.

10. Handling a malware infection

It does not matter how well end users have been educated about the risks of visiting shady websites or opening email attachments: at some point, malware will reach a client and attempt to infect it. The various layers of the G DATA security solution will cooperate in blocking the threat, so no harm will be done to the system or the network. A report will be added to the SECURITY EVENTS module, optionally notifying the administrator(s) automatically¹⁴. While malware is blocked completely automatically, it does not mean that a threat can be ignored. Administrators should inform themselves about the threat: where did it come from, what is it capable of doing and what is the risk of encountering it again?

The advantage of having malware blocked automatically is that no immediate action needs to be taken on the client. However, a single malware infection can be the tip of the iceberg: especially corporate networks are often targeted by sophisticated campaigns that consist of multiple attacks using different vectors. G DATA Administrator offers excellent logging capabilities and statistics modules to evaluate infections and decide if further measures should be taken. The starting point for any further analysis will be the SECURITY EVENTS module, but many of the G DATA security modules can assist in researching a malware infection and prevent further issues.

For organizations that have risk management procedures or similar measures in place, a malware infection can trigger several events. The automated detection and mitigation and extended mitigation stages can be merged with or altered to suit the existing procedures, while the information gathered during the post-infection stage can assist in making sure the attack vector can no longer be abused.

10.1. Automated detection and mitigation

Detecting malware is a fully automated procedure. When one of the security layers of G DATA locates a threat, whether during a scheduled scan or as result of a real time security module, it automatically carries out the measure which has been defined in advance and adds a report to the SECURITY EVENTS module. For that reason, it is important to decide the course of action beforehand. Two mitigation paths should be followed: taking care of the infection itself, and preventing further distribution across the network. The former can be configured directly using G DATA Administrator's CLIENT SETTINGS module, while the latter requires a comprehensive overview of network clients and their security settings (see chapter 10.2).

How a malware-infected file should be handled can be defined for each security layer individually. For the real time file system protection, the MONITOR tab offers the appropriate options under REACTION TO INFECTED FILES. On the same tab, the BEHAVIOR MONITORING component can be configured. The email scan can be configured on the EMAIL tab, whereas scheduled scan jobs in the TASKS module offer reaction settings on the SCANNER tab. Some measures can be combined, such as disinfecting and quarantining a file.

10.1.1. Block access

The first action that should be taken once malware is detected is blocking the affected file to prevent it from running and infecting the system. This is the absolute minimum. If an infected file is not blocked, it

¹⁴ It is recommended to configure alarms, email messages that are sent to the administrator in case of a malware infection or other trigger event. See chapter 6 for more information about (automated) monitoring.

will infect the system. Depending on the type of malware, this leads to system instability, performance loss, data loss or worse. All G DATA security modules offer the option to block infected files (or halt the process as soon as it exhibits suspicious behavior, in case of the behavior monitoring module). Once a file or process is blocked, the client immediately sends a report to the ManagementServer, where it will trigger the optionally configured notification procedure.

Blocking malware successfully prevents infection at that point in time, but does not take care of the file itself. The offending file or process will remain on the hard drive and can still try to infect the system at a later stage. This does not form a problem for access by clients that are protected by G DATA security modules. However, other clients that have access to the file without being protected, can still get infected. Therefore, it is recommended that there will always be an additional action carried out after blocking the file: either disinfecting, quarantining or deleting it.

10.1.2. Disinfection

Malware can manifest itself as isolated file, solely created to infect systems. In other cases, it consists of one or more components that attach themselves to legitimate files. This can serve several purposes. A user is more likely to open an infected file if it does not look infected. Hiding a malware module in a Word document or third party executable makes it more likely that an end user inadvertently runs it.

Furthermore, detection of malware is more difficult when it is wrapped in an innocuous file. Finally, malware that manipulates documents or programs that are already on the client has more leverage over the end user, because it can threaten to remove, hide or encrypt files.

The Disinfection action attempts to remove the malware from the file that it has infected. After a successful cleanup, the file can be used without the risk of infecting the system. For the security modules that offer the option, Disinfection is the recommended setting. When malware is detected, the security module evaluates the file and checks if disinfection is a possible strategy. Not all files can be cleaned: some malware irreparably damages files. Especially difficult is the cleanup of files that have been manipulated by malware, but do not contain malware themselves, such as encrypted documents. For this reason, the real time protection modules focus on preventing infection from happening. Disinfection is a great option to try, but should be combined with a fallback option in case disinfection does not work. For all modules, disinfection can be combined with a different mitigation setting: blocking file access, moving the file to the quarantine, or removing it.

10.1.3. Quarantine

Making use of the Quarantine function is recommended, especially in combination with disinfection. The secured Quarantine folder functions as a safe for infected files. Each security module can move detected malware to the quarantine, where it will be renamed to prevent it from being run. Access to the quarantine is available for administrators and users (if enabled). Every file in the quarantine has its own report in the SECURITY EVENTS module. The list of reports can be limited to quarantine reports by using the appropriate toolbar button. From the quarantine, the affected file(s) can be cleaned and moved back, or deleted by clicking the toolbar buttons or by right-clicking the report and choosing the appropriate option. When working with quarantined files, it should be made sure that they are not run before they have been disinfecting. If a file cannot be disinfecting, do not attempt to run it anyway, but leave it in the

quarantine or remove it instead. The only exception is a false positive: if a file has been wrongly marked as malware, it should be added to the exception list of the affected module, and can be moved back from the quarantine. Extra attention is required when whitelisting suspicious files: accidentally allowing malware back onto a clean client leads to severe system problems and data loss. Quarantined files can be sent to G DATA for additional analysis. In case of a (suspected) virus infection, this helps improve the future detection rate. However, due to the high volume of file submissions, no individual responses can be sent.

10.1.4. Remove file

Removal of an infected file is the most thorough mitigation method. Whenever malware is detected, it is automatically deleted and will not be able to infect the client or to be distributed to other machines. Enterprises that insist on maximum security, no matter the practical consequences, can configure the security modules to immediately delete all infected files. However, this is not the recommended setting. Depending on module and scanner settings, files could incidentally be falsely recognized as malware. Immediately deleting them could then lead to data loss. In all cases, quarantining the file, optionally combined with disinfection, is the recommended setting.

10.2. Extended mitigation

In addition to the automated measures that each security module can carry out, there are several actions an administrator should take. First of all, on the client side, the end user(s) can be informed about the infection. Users may have inadvertently opened an infected website, file or other resource. The virus warning will show them that access to the resource has been denied and that the file has been quarantined or removed.

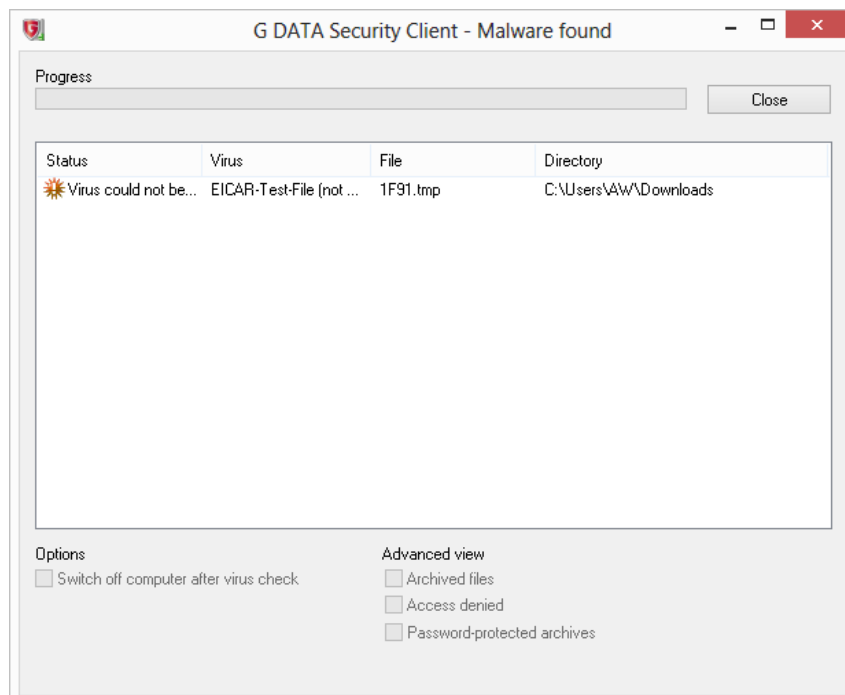


Image 39: G DATA Security Client, Malware found

The warning window can be enabled in the **CLIENT SETTINGS** module by checking **NOTIFY USER WHEN A VIRUS HAS BEEN FOUND** on the **MONITOR** tab. It can be useful to notify end users if malware was blocked. They will know to stay away from the affected resource in the future, and might be able to provide the administrator with more details about the infection attempt. However, for inexperienced end users, the prompt may cause confusion or anxiety, leading to support calls. For those users, the virus notification should be disabled. An alternative is manually sending a message to the affected client using the **MESSAGES** function of the **CLIENTS** module. This allows for more customization, sending more appropriate information to the end user. However, this process cannot be automated, so there will be some time between the infection and the moment the administrator manually sends the message.

Similar arguments for and against user intervention apply to the question whether users should be allowed to open the local quarantine folder. This option can be enabled in the **CLIENT SETTINGS** module and lets users check a simplified version of the quarantine reports that are normally only available in the **SECURITY EVENTS** module. G DATA Security Client will offer a **QUARANTINE** window through its system tray context menu. The quarantine shows the date and time of infection, the virus name, its filename and the directory where it was found. Users can disinfect, move back or delete files. In case of a false positive, an end user can restore the quarantined file without administrator intervention. At the same time, this shows the danger of the function: files that are possibly still infected could be moved back without any cleaning procedure. It is recommended to keep this option disabled for all clients. If an end user or administrator needs to access the quarantine on a client, the option can be enabled for that client only, making sure it requires a password (enable **PROTECT CLIENT SETTINGS WITH A PASSWORD** in the **CLIENT SETTINGS** module).

On the server side, administrators can carry out several measures once a virus infection is reported. The first thing to do is ensure that a possible infection cannot spread to other network clients. How to do this depends on the severity of the infection. For simple, contained malware infections, taking care of the file by quarantining or deleting it will do. If an outbreak has the potential to infect other network clients, especially those that are not being protected by a security solution, the infected client should be disconnected from the network as soon as possible by (temporarily) revoking its access on network level, or by physically disconnecting it. This does require the administrator to continue infection research and mitigation locally, and is therefore only recommended in acute cases. In any case, scheduling an immediate full scan for the affected client is recommended (see chapter 9.2.2), checking its hard drives, memory and autostart for traces of malware. When using the **PatchManager** module (see chapter 15), the client should be checked for outdated software. Any missing patches should be deployed as quickly as possible. The **PolicyManager** module helps block applications, devices or web content and can be configured as part of an enterprise content policy. A malware infection can be used as a starting point for a new policy: if the attack vector is known (such as a specific website, an infected USB drive or other removable medium), **PolicyManager** can block it in future cases (see chapter 14).

10.3. Analysis

After the initial mitigation procedure, the malware infection should be analyzed. This procedure does not involve a strict protocol or pre-defined actions. The focus is obtaining information about the malware to prevent future infections. Due to time constraints, some administrators may not have time for this, while others will research all aspects of the infection and gather facts and advice. Important is one thing: the

malware has already been blocked once and will be automatically blocked if it tries to infect the system again. Performing additional analysis and gathering more information helps optimize the protection process, but is not required. The more information is found, the more specific the additional measures that the administrator can implement, such as blacklisting specific websites or programs, or configuring additional scans.

Starting point for research of an infection is the SECURITY EVENTS module. The file name of the infected file will be listed, in addition to the folder where it was found and the name of the virus. The REPORTED BY column shows which security module has detected the virus, which helps determine how the virus tried to attack the client. For example, reports from the Monitor module refer to files that were written to or read from the file system. Most Monitor detections are triggered by files that are being read from an external device (such as a USB stick), or written by a process (such as a file being downloaded in the browser). Based on the module that reported the virus, extra measures can be planned, such as an extra scheduled scan job, adding a website to the PolicyManager blacklist or adjusting the MONITOR settings.

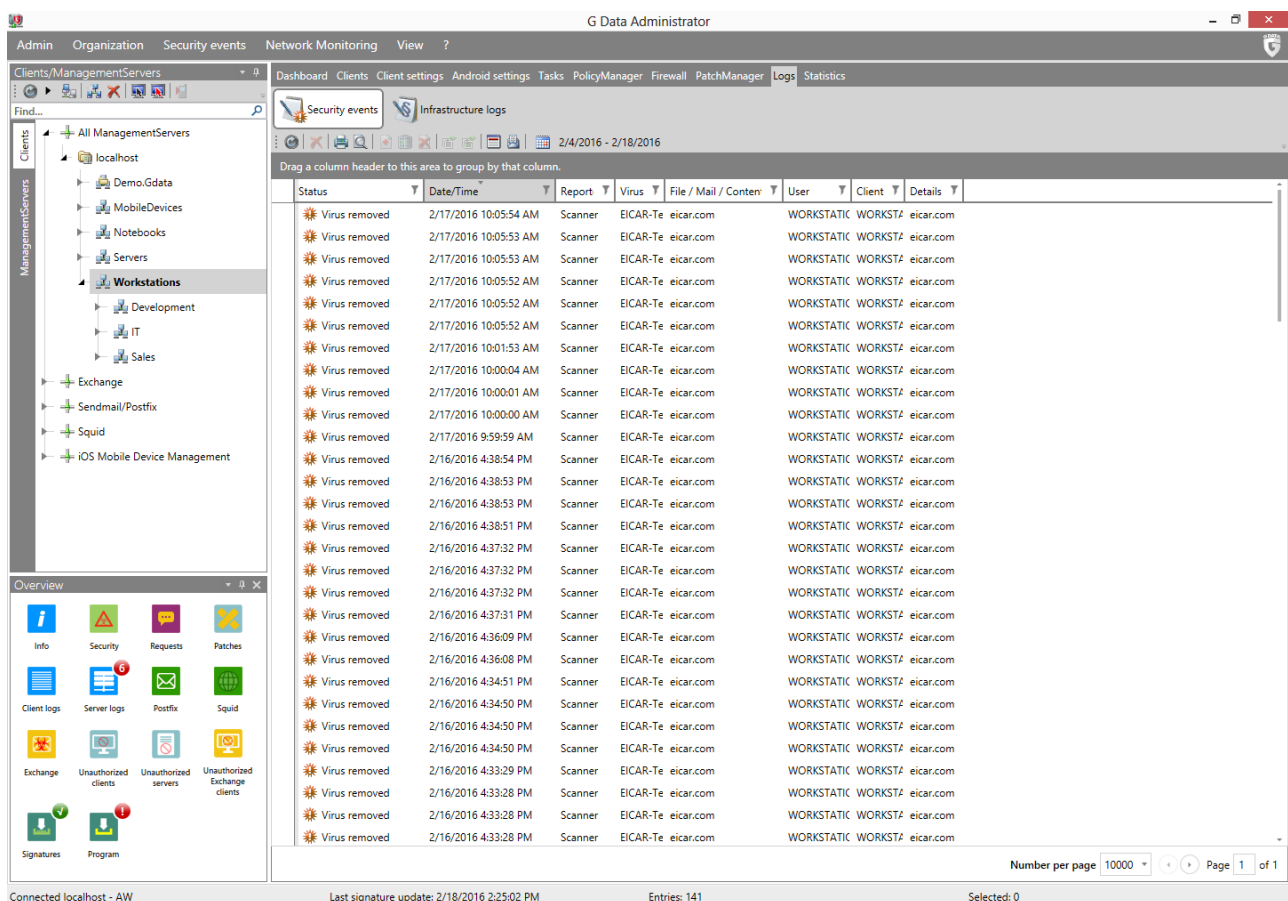


Image 40: G DATA Administrator, Security events

The virus name is an important entry point in finding information. Both the complete virus name as well as its family or category components can help locate essential tips about dealing with an infection. The SECURITY EVENTS module will display the virus name as it was reported by the security module and scan engine. The first part of the name often refers to the type of malware: Trojan, Adware, Generic, or others. This makes clear what the main function of the malware is and may clarify how it infected the system. For some viruses, the malware type will be followed by a platform designation, such as JS (JavaScript) or VBS (VBScript). The platform defines the programming or scripting language that the malware was written in,

or is exploiting. While this is valuable information, it cannot directly be used to close attack vectors. Blocking a complete platform from running on client PCs is a drastic measure, which usually affects a large number of legitimate programs. However, looking at the particular security options of a platform and keeping track of its vulnerabilities is recommended practice (even before an infection is detected). In addition to the platform, some virus names contain an explicit reference to the bug that they are exploiting. For example, Exploit.CVE-2016-1345.Gen exploits the vulnerability described in the Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) database under entry 2016-1345. CVE database entries can be extremely helpful in finding out information about known vulnerabilities and their mitigation methods. The US Department of Homeland Security maintains a CVE database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> which offers free access to the latest CVE bulletins. The rest of the virus name usually consists of a free form name, adapted from one of the identifying properties of that particular piece of malware. The name often differs between antivirus vendors, but can help kick start an online search for additional information.

11. Mobile device management

Enterprise networks do not consist solely of PCs. To support increased connectivity, many businesses have started handing out mobile devices to their employees, such as tablets and smartphones. Others allow employees to use their own devices at work. Making resources and information available on mobile devices allows employees to be productive outside the traditional work environment, but comes with its own risks. Mobile attacks can compromise device security, leading to information theft or damaged equipment. This type of threat is even more applicable to networks allowing unmanaged devices to connect. Enabling access to enterprise resources for employee-owned private devices can be a viable way to increase productivity while saving on device costs, but requires a strict safety policy to prevent malware infections in the corporate network.

Mobile device management is included in every G DATA solution. Mobile devices are managed through the same interface as other clients: G DATA Administrator lists mobile devices in its `CLIENTS` view, and configuration takes place using the same modular system that is used to manage Windows and Linux clients.

11.1. Android

Similar to the way in which PCs are protected, Android devices are secured by an agent-based G DATA solution. The Internet Security for Android app can be used to centrally manage malware protection, permissions, anti-theft options, and contacts.

11.1.1. Managing Android devices

Android devices are deployed using the appropriate function in the `CLIENTS` view toolbar, and will show up automatically once the client app has been installed and made its first connection to the ManagementServer. See chapter 4.8.4 for more information on Android device deployment. The device name can be changed on the `ANDROID SETTINGS` tab. Adding an additional `NOTE` helps tell the different clients apart. Because Android devices show up as clients in the list, they can be moved to groups. Ideally, all devices in the same group can be managed using the same policy, and all devices using that policy are added to the same group. As with regular clients, there are several types of groups that can be defined, based on network zones and client roles (see chapter 7.1). A logical classification would be to add Android devices to groups based on corporate departments. If there are usage scenarios transcending department boundaries, grouping devices according to their use is an alternative.

Especially in a BYOD setting, it is important to establish management responsibility. For devices that have been issued by the company, full device management responsibility should lie with corporate network administrators. For devices that have been purchased by employees, however, the boundary may not be so clear: can employees be forced to secure devices that do not belong to the company? G DATA device management solves this problem by using configuration profiles. For each device or group, a `PHONE TYPE` can be defined under `ANDROID SETTINGS > POLICIES`. Depending on the `PHONE TYPE`, a specific configuration profile is applied to the device. When selecting `CORPORATE`, the device will use settings from the corporate profile, which is managed via G DATA Administrator. End users are not allowed access to any settings. This is the recommended setting for corporate devices. When setting `PRIVATE`, the device uses its local configuration profile, allowing the end users to configure settings on the device itself. This

setting should be used when the device has not been issued by the company and there is no legal right to manage the device. The `MIXED` setting lets users switch freely between the corporate and the private configuration profile.

Especially when using the corporate profile, end users should be informed of the fact that their device is being managed remotely and that the administrator can decide to take far-reaching actions, such as blocking access to the device or even wiping the device (in the context of anti-theft measures; see chapter 11.1.6). To this end, the `CLIENTS` module offers the possibility to have Internet Security display an end user license agreement (EULA) to which the end user must agree. The `CLIENTS` menu lets administrators write and manage EULAs under `EULA MANAGEMENT`. Any number of agreements can be created. With an Android client selected, a EULA can be assigned or removed by choosing `EDIT ASSIGNED EULA` OR `REMOVE ASSIGNED EULA` from the `CLIENTS` menu.

Before configuring specific device management policies, the update schedule and synchronization should be defined. Both settings depend on the usage pattern for the device. Devices that are often connected to a wireless network can be configured to update their virus signatures automatically and synchronize data with the ManagementServer every few hours. Devices that are mostly used outside the company network, or connect to the internet using a mobile data plan, can be configured to update less often, or manually, or only when connected via Wi-Fi. The same applies to synchronization: different settings can be configured for Wi-Fi and mobile data plans.

11.1.2. Real time and on demand protection

Like desktop and laptop clients, Android clients are also vulnerable to malware infections. Rooted devices in particular do not have sufficient protection mechanisms against malicious apps from unknown sources, but even malevolent apps that manage to sneak their way into the official app stores can have severe implications. Similarly, websites may try to serve malware, take advantage of vulnerabilities in the operating system or otherwise deceive the end user. For this reason, Internet Security for Android provides real time as well as on demand protection. The `GENERAL` tab of the `ANDROID SETTINGS` module contains options for all security modules.

`WEB PROTECTION` provides real time protection when using the Android browser. It is recommended to keep this setting enabled. Because web protection can produce a small amount of data traffic, it can be configured to work only when the device is connected via Wi-Fi. The second real time protection component is the automatic virus check, which can be enabled by selecting `WHEN INSTALLING APPS` under `VIRUS CHECK`. Whenever an app is downloaded and launched, the virus check transparently checks it for malware and blocks the installation if it is found to be malicious.

On demand protection is available in the form of a full virus check for the complete device. Under `VIRUS CHECK`, enable `WHEN INSTALLING APPS` to let Internet Security scan the device regularly. Two types of scans can be configured: `SYSTEM (FULL SCAN)` OR `INSTALLED APPLICATIONS`. As long as the device is not slowed down too much by the scan, a regular system check is recommended to make sure no malware is lingering on storage media (such as an SD card). Depending on how often the device is used and how often new software is installed or saved on it, the interval can be set to 1 day, 3 days, 7 days, 14 days or 30 days. In most cases, it is recommended to perform a daily check: the scan does not cause any noticeable slowdowns, and provides maximum security. To make sure that the virus check is not draining the device battery, it can

be configured to only take place while the device is recharging. Alternatively, check **POWER SAVE MODE** to make sure that the scan is postponed if the device is in power save mode. This saves battery, but opens a vulnerability window during which existing malware may go unnoticed.

11.1.3. Device policies

On Android devices, the largest threat comes from rooted devices. If the end user has obtained root access to the device, any amount of security on the operating system and app levels can easily be subverted and if malware manages to infect the device, it gains virtually unlimited access to operating system functions. In order to stay in control of managed Android devices, it is therefore recommended to refuse network access to rooted devices. On the **POLICIES** panel of the **ANDROID SETTINGS** module, the administrator can define the corporate **WLAN** network's **SSID**, **PASSWORD** and **ENCRYPTION**. If **ALLOW ROOTED DEVICES** is not enabled, rooted devices that have Internet Security installed will be locked using the remote maintenance password (see chapter 11.1.6) and access to the **WLAN** will be denied.

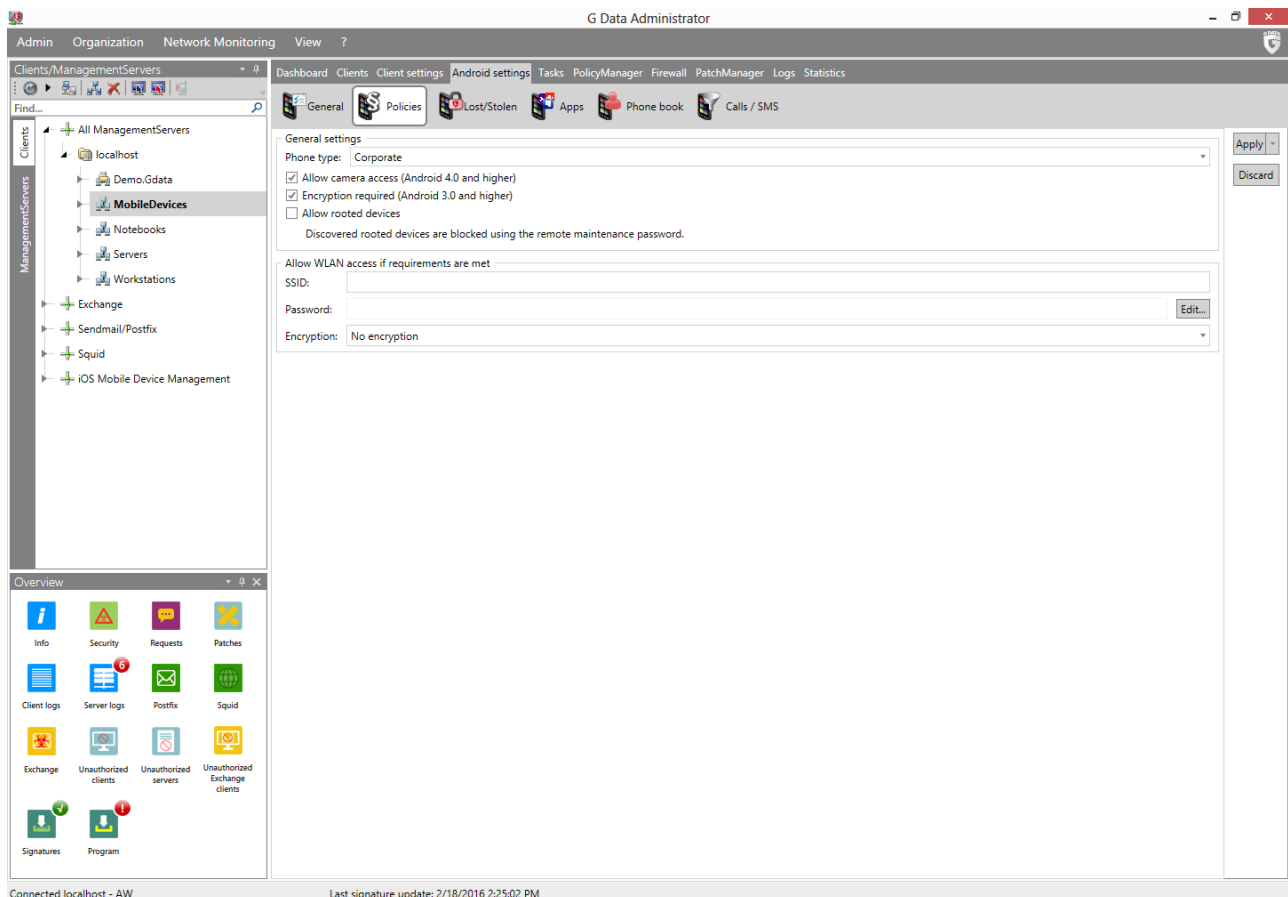


Image 41: G DATA Administrator, Android settings, Policies

In addition to blocking rooted devices, the **POLICIES** tab offers other settings. For each device, the administrator can enable or disable camera access (for devices using Android 4.0 and higher). To protect data stored on the phone, encryption can be made mandatory. When **ENCRYPTION REQUIRED** is checked (Android 3.0 and higher), the device will automatically open Android's encryption settings window to allow the user to enable it. The window cannot be closed until encryption has been enabled.

11.1.4.Apps

Part of the attraction of mobile devices is the fact that their default functionality can be expanded by installing apps. Even in a corporate context, this can be extremely useful: productivity tools or configuration apps can significantly increase the number of use cases for mobile devices. At the same time, corporate devices should provide a controlled environment, making sure that apps cannot cause compatibility problems, obtain sensitive information, or spread malware. App management is a powerful way to control the functionality of an Android device, balancing security with usability. Administrators should be aware at all times which apps are running on managed Android devices, and block or allow them as required.

The ANDROID SETTINGS module offers elaborate app management possibilities on the APPS tab. As a first step, it can be used to take an inventory of apps that are in use on Android devices in the network. Each installed app is listed with its name, version and size. For each app, administrators should obtain information about its vendor, its functions and its version history, insofar information sources are available. For many apps, the official app store(s) will provide enough details, for others it may be necessary to look up the vendor's homepage. Based on this information and on the intended use of the device (based on the device group, type and network zone), apps can be added to the whitelist or blacklist. This will allow or block the listed apps, respectively. Using the defined password, apps are blocked from running.

Whether to use a blacklist or whitelist approach depends on whether the device should be completely locked down. If the goal is to only block a few known bad apps, while allowing the user relative freedom, a blacklist approach will do. At the very least, the Android Settings app and Internet Security itself should be password-protected. This will prevent the end user from tampering with any settings. Blacklisting the official app store makes sure that no other apps can be installed. To completely control a device's app experience, the whitelist approach is the most reliable option. Whitelisted apps can be used without any limitations, but all other apps are blocked. This is most useful for devices that are configured for maximum security, or for a single workflow. For example, a device that is only to be used by sales representatives may be run in whitelist mode, allowing only the phone component and the sales database app to be used.

11.1.5. Contact management and filtering

For devices that are used in a corporate context, controlling communication streams can be essential. Blocking apps can help if communication should be entirely prevented, but in some scenarios a more fine-grained filter should be deployed. Rather than completely blocking the Phone app if a device is only meant to be used for work-related communication, outgoing and incoming calls could be filtered if they do not meet corporate criteria. For example, a company that supplies its employees with phones to communicate with headquarters while on the road could block all phone calls except those with pre-approved corporate contacts. To manage contacts on the phone, the Corporate phone book can be used. Even without using any filtering possibilities, blocking the built-in device phone book and populating Internet Security's corporate phone book can be an effective way of ensuring control over contact information.

The **PHONE BOOK** and **CALLS / SMS** tabs of the **ANDROID SETTINGS** module together offer extensive contact management and filtering possibilities. The basis of all functionality is the contact database. It functions as a central hub for all corporate contacts, based on which phone books can be created for various devices, as well as targeted call and SMS filters. The database can be opened by opening the **PHONE BOOK** or **CALLS / SMS** module and clicking **SHOW CONTACT DATABASE**. Contacts can be added manually by clicking the appropriate button in the toolbar. The **CONTACT** window offers input fields for name, address, email/fax/phone and organization details. For organizations with a limited number of contacts, or for small managed phone books, entering contacts manually is a practical way to quickly populate the contact database. If the network is using Active Directory, the **IMPORT CONTACTS** button can be used to import contact data. Select the appropriate domain and click **OK** to import all contacts from the domain. From the **CONTACT DATABASE** overview list, imported contacts can be edited or removed. Click **CLOSE** when the database has been populated with all necessary contact information. With all contacts defined in the **CONTACT DATABASE**, they can be distributed to the appropriate devices. For example, all devices can be supplied with a complete list of colleagues' direct extensions. Alternatively, combined with a block of the standard phone book app and use of the **CALLS / SMS** module, groups of devices can be allowed access only to certain explicitly deployed phone numbers in the Phone book.

The **CALLS / SMS** module can be used for extensive filtering of incoming and outgoing communication. It functions as a filter on the built-in device phone book. Rather than completely blocking the Android phone book app, the filter allows granular control over communication streams. For example, enabling the whitelist mode, no incoming or outgoing calls will be allowed, except for those numbers that have been added to the whitelist. In blacklist mode, communication is generally allowed, but specific numbers can be blocked.

11.1.6. Lost/Stolen

To make sure that corporate emails, documents and other communication cannot be accessed when a device is lost or stolen, several anti-theft measures can be defined. Firstly, it can be helpful to try to recover the device. Locating it using GPS technology or triggering an alarm sound can help. If locating the device is not an option or does not yield any usable results, locking it will make the device useless to any thief. As a measure of last resort, devices can be reset to the factory defaults, wiping all data on the device.

The **ANDROID SETTINGS** module offers access to **LOST/STOLEN** measures. They can be triggered automatically as well as manually. To enable all measures, several settings have to be configured. A **REMOTE MAINTENANCE PASSWORD** (a numerical PIN code) should be entered. It will be used as a password when sending SMS commands, and as a lock screen password if a lock screen password has not been explicitly defined. Enter a **TRUSTED PHONE NUMBER** to make sure that the password reset command cannot be sent by anyone – only a password reset sent from the trusted phone number will be executed. Finally, enter the **EMAIL ADDRESS FOR NOTIFICATIONS**, to receive feedback from actions that provide it.

When a device gets lost or stolen, the easiest method of executing an action on it is sending an SMS message to it. Under **SMS COMMANDS**, you can enable or disable the commands which can be sent to the device. Send an SMS message containing the following command to the device to trigger the respective measure:

Command	Measure
<i>password locate</i>	Locate device. The device will report its location via SMS. If an email address has been entered under EMAIL ADDRESS FOR NOTIFICATIONS, location data will be sent there as well.
<i>password wipe</i>	Delete personal data. All personal data will be wiped.
<i>password ring</i>	Play ringtone. The device will play a ringtone until Internet Security is started.
<i>password mute</i>	Mute device. Mute all ringtones, except the one triggered by the alarm sound option.
<i>password lock</i>	Enable lock screen using the lock screen password. If no lock screen password has been defined, the remote maintenance password will be used.
<i>password set device password:</i> <i>newpassword</i>	Set lock screen password. Sets the password which is used for locking the device. This does not automatically lock the device: be sure to send the lock command afterwards.

The first part of the command (*password*) is the REMOTE MAINTENANCE PASSWORD. If necessary, it can be reset by SMS. Using the TRUSTED PHONE NUMBER, send the following command: remote password reset: **newpassword**.

If a device is stolen, its SIM card is often removed to prevent the original owner from contacting the device via its phone number. As a countermeasure, you can define actions to be taken automatically when the SIM card is changed. The phone's lock screen can be enabled, making the device inaccessible, and the device can be located. This will send an email to the address defined under EMAIL ADDRESS FOR NOTIFICATIONS containing GPS coordinates. Be sure to disable these measures if the SIM card needs to be changed, for example when a device is being retired or assigned to another employee.

In addition to SIM- and SMS-based measures, several actions can also be initiated via G DATA Administrator. If it becomes necessary to trigger a measure immediately, the EMERGENCY ACTION function can be used. The device does not need to be able to receive SMS messages or to be connected to the ManagementServer network for this to work: it relies on Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM), an online service from Google which lets you send commands to Android devices. In order to use this service, you need to register a Google account and obtain a server key and a sender ID for FCM. More information can be found on the FCM website¹⁵. In G DATA Administrator, the API KEY (FCM: Server key) and SENDER ID should be entered under GENERAL SETTINGS > ANDROID.

With SENDER ID and API KEY configured, it is easy to trigger an emergency action from the G DATA Administrator interface. Select the device on which you would like to trigger the measure in the CLIENTS view, and select the appropriate action. By clicking EXECUTE ACTION, the command is sent to the device and carried out immediately. The commands function identically to the ones that can be triggered by SMS.

11.2. iOS

Unlike Android devices, iOS devices do not need an app in order to be protected. Deploying an iOS MDM profile (available for iOS 7.0 and higher) lets administrators enforce restrictions for apps, functionality and content, as well as for passcodes and wireless networks.

¹⁵ See <https://firebase.google.com>.

11.2.1. Managing iOS devices

iOS devices are deployed using the appropriate function in the CLIENTS view toolbar and will show up automatically once the end user has opened the MDM request through the installation email (see chapter 4.8.5 for more information on iOS device deployment). When an iOS device is selected in G DATA Administrator, a set of iOS MDM modules becomes available.

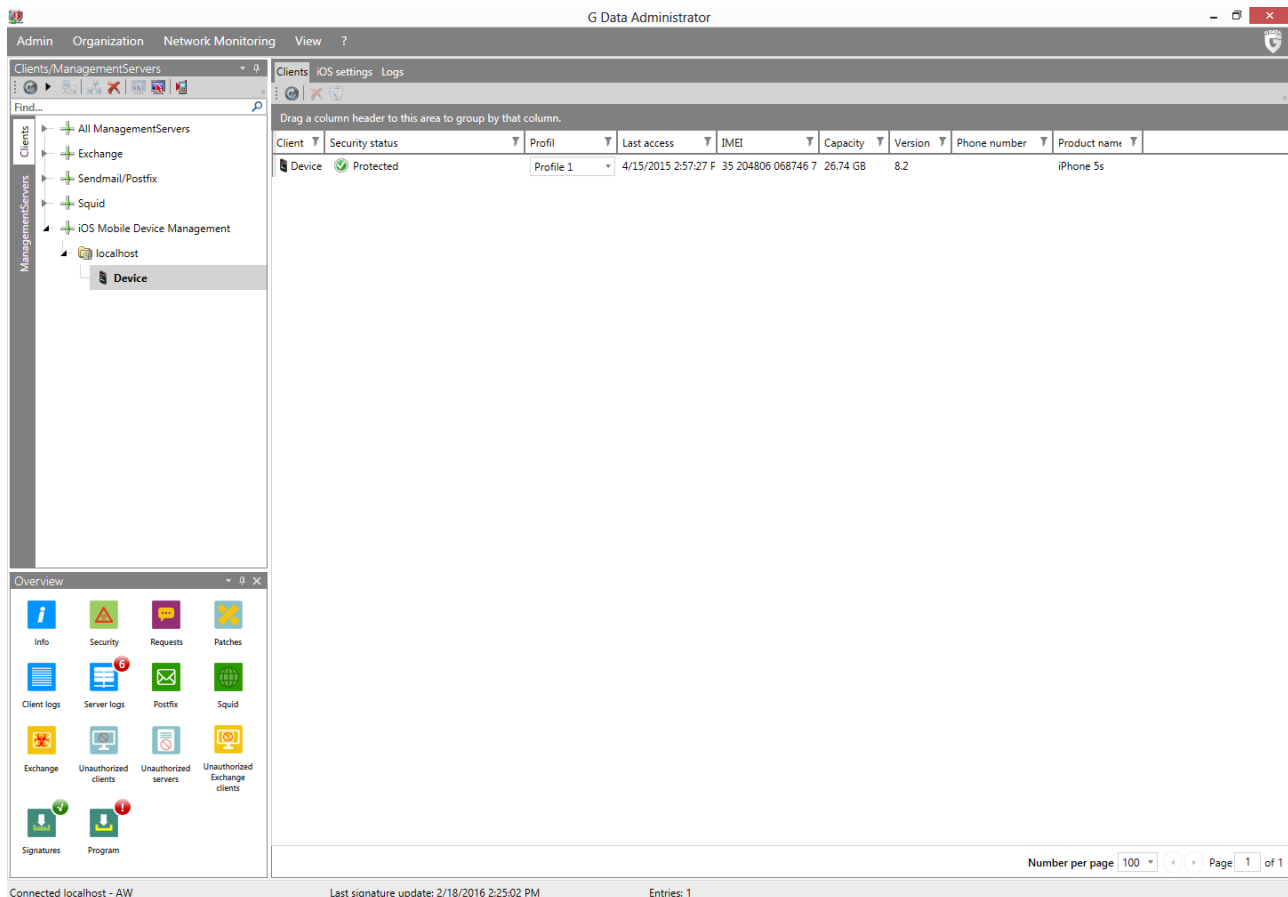


Image 42: G DATA Administrator, Clients (iOS)

The CLIENTS (iOS) tab shows an overview of all managed iOS devices. For each client, several device-specific properties are displayed, such as its IMEI number, the iOS version and the product name. The SECURITY STATUS column provides warnings for devices without a policy profile (see chapter 11.2.2) as well as MDM installation status alerts, because Apple's MDM concept allows end users to remove MDM from a device without administrator approval. For devices without active MDM (either because it has been removed by the administrator or the end user or because the installation has not been approved), the right-click menu allows you to resend the installation link.

When removing devices from iOS device management, make sure to disable MDM first. Only when the SECURITY STATUS column confirms that MDM has been disabled should the device be removed, to prevent devices from becoming unmanageable (for example, when they are removed from the list before the command to disable MDM has been received by the device). Communication between G DATA ActionCenter and iOS devices is carried out using push messages. iOS devices need to have Wi-Fi access or a SIM card with a data plan in order to receive push messages. Without a data plan and Wi-Fi access, the device cannot be fully activated or managed. Some iOS device states can interfere with receiving

push messages, leading to a delayed execution of MDM commands. To ensure proper communication, the device should be charged and not in sleep mode, do not disturb mode or flight mode. The status of the various push messages can be tracked using the Logs (iOS) module. Reports include profile deployment status and anti-theft function confirmations. The number of reports is limited to 1000; when the limit is reached, the oldest reports will be removed first.

11.2.2. Device policies

When using iOS devices in a corporate environment, some functionality needs to be locked down to make sure that sensitive data are secured and that the devices are only used for productive purposes. Device and app settings, content and Wi-Fi access can be controlled using policy profiles.

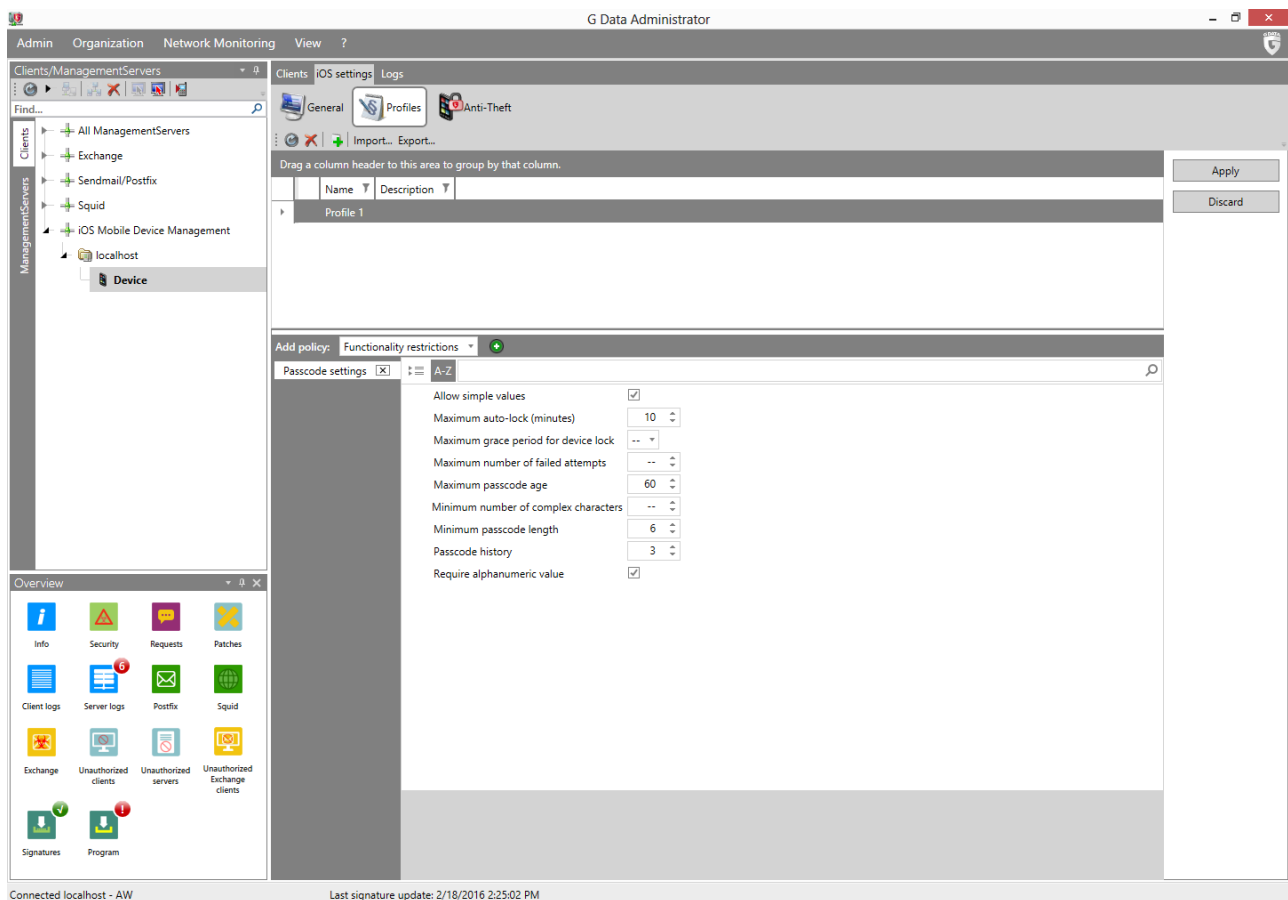


Image 43: G DATA Administrator, iOS settings, Profiles

As with Android devices, the recommended policy usage depends on the access to sensitive data and on the amount of freedom that individual end users should have. For example, when devices are allowed access to the company network and/or company data, it should be made sure that there are no apps present on the device that could compromise sensitive information. The number of restrictions also depends on whether the device was issued by the company or belongs to an employee. End users are unlikely to allow their private devices to be strictly managed, but for company devices a rigorous set of policies can be deployed.

G DATA Administrator allows policy profile management through the PROFILES tab. A profile consists of up to five policies, which contain thematically grouped settings. For example, the APP RESTRICTIONS policy lets

administrators disable the iTunes Store, while the `PASSCODE SETTINGS` policy mandates minimum standards for the device's passcode. Having added policies, a profile can be assigned to one or more iOS devices using the `CLIENTS (iOS)` module or the `GENERAL` tab of the `IOS SETTINGS` module, allowing for consistent settings across all devices.

The choice of device policies is up to the administrator and depends on the corporate security requirements. A few recommendations can be made nonetheless. If the device has no passcode set, the lock screen functionality which can be triggered by the `ANTI-THEFT` module is inadequate. To make sure that the device can be locked in case it is stolen, it is recommended to deploy the `PASSCODE SETTINGS` policy, enforcing the use of passcode. Since Apple's MDM implementation allows end users to disable MDM locally on iOS devices, the use of one or more `WLAN` policies is recommended to prevent users from circumventing policies at will. By combining a `WLAN` policy with other policies, end users are forced to accept the other policies if they want to continue to access the wireless network. For example, add WPA/WPA2 password protection to the corporate wireless network to prevent devices from accessing it, then add a `WLAN` policy containing network name and login details to the MDM profile. This will make sure that only iOS devices with that profile can access the network. When an end user tries to circumvent any content policies by disabling MDM, not only the restrictions are removed, but also access to the corporate `WLAN`, making continued usage of the device very impractical.

11.2.3. Anti-theft

When a device is lost or stolen, the first action to take is to make sure that no one can access any data on the device. Afterwards, it can be located using GPS (to find and return the device) or the more drastic measure of wiping the device can be carried out (in case there is no chance of finding and returning the device).

The `IOS SETTINGS` module lets administrators trigger anti-theft functions directly on the `ANTI-THEFT` tab. The device lock and reset functions can be triggered by selecting the respective option and clicking `EXECUTE FUNCTION`. Note that the device lock only enables the lock screen; if a passcode has not been set, the lock screen can be easily disabled (see chapter 11.2.2). For devices that have been locked using an unknown passcode, use the option `REMOVE PASSCODE`.

12. Backups

Backup is available as an optional module.

For many enterprises, the digitization of work processes has appointed computers to be organization-wide information carriers. While access to digitized data is far easier than having to regularly access paper archives, it brings its own set of challenges. Data security and data integrity have to be monitored carefully. Physical problems such as a power failure or a broken hard disk can severely affect workflows, especially if files cannot be recovered. Malware may encrypt, infect or remove files, or documents are removed through human error. To minimize recovery time after a data incident, it is important to plan file backups and recovery carefully. Regularly making a backup by copying files to a secure location makes sure that files are never irrevocably lost. As with infection mitigation, planning ahead is key. If files are lost due to a physical problem or human error, they should be recovered without delay. Making sure that files are backed up regularly by formalizing a backup and recovery plan is essential in guaranteeing business continuity.

A backup and recovery plan is part prevention, part recovery. As a starting point, it can be helpful to classify all data sources on the network according to properties such as value, risk or backup effort. If the company employs information workers, who spend most of their time working on digital documents, those documents should always be secured. Similarly, central data storages such as databases, email servers or collaboration environments should be backed up to make sure that no data are lost in case of emergency. In contrast, some data are interchangeable. A client's operating system usually does not need to be backed up, because it can be reinstalled if its data get compromised. The same goes for software packages for which the installation media are still available. Operating system configuration and software settings, however, may be among the data that should be backed up, if extensive customization has been carried out after deployment. For every decision about the data to be included in backups, it has to be made sure that storage is available. Especially when data sets are regularly backed up, or if they include large files, storage requirements can increase exponentially.

When the data to be backed up have been selected, the question is how often the backup should be carried out. Backup jobs can be planned to be carried out only once, or according to a schedule. A one-time backup is only useful in very specific circumstances, for example when a data set needs to be secured immediately, outside of the defined schedule. In most cases, backup should be scheduled. A recent copy of the data to be secured should be available at all times, to be able to quickly recover in case of emergency. A scheduled backup takes care of this. After configuring it once, there will always be a recent data copy. All that needs to be done is regularly checking logs to see if the backup was carried out successfully. There is a trade-off between security and performance. The more often backups are made, the less data will be lost if a client hard disk crashes or if files are infected by malware. However, making a backup requires time and performance (disk activity) on the client, and disk space on the backup target (server). This issue is mostly addressed by using differential backups (see chapter 12.2), but it is important to verify that the backup target has enough disk space available at all times.

Since backups are an essential part of a security policy, it should be made sure that they are carried out successfully. As with most IT related tasks, it is recommended to appoint a person or team to the task of planning, managing and carrying out backups. Having a responsible person or team will allow for swifter

decision making in case of emergency. If an administrator or end user reports data loss, the workflow should be optimized for speedy choices and effective data recovery.

12.1. Managing backups

Its seamless integration allows administration through G DATA Administrator's TASKS and SECURITY EVENTS modules, and makes sure that backup configuration and management can be carried out with ease. Backup jobs can be planned and managed on the TASKS tab. As with every module, all jobs apply to the client or group selected in the CLIENTS view. The list columns show the most important properties of the jobs and can be sorted by client, group, status, last execution, interval, scope, or name. For client jobs, the client for which they have been defined is displayed (for groups, the group name). The STATUS column shows the current status of the job. For group jobs, the status can be checked per client by selecting the appropriate client on the left. The INTERVAL column displays the defined backup interval, such as ONCE for a single backup job, or DAILY for a periodic backup job that runs every day. Finally, the SCOPE displays the backup scope that has been defined for the job. When a backup job has been previously run, expanding it reveals a list of status messages for each run. Double click on the status to open a detailed log.

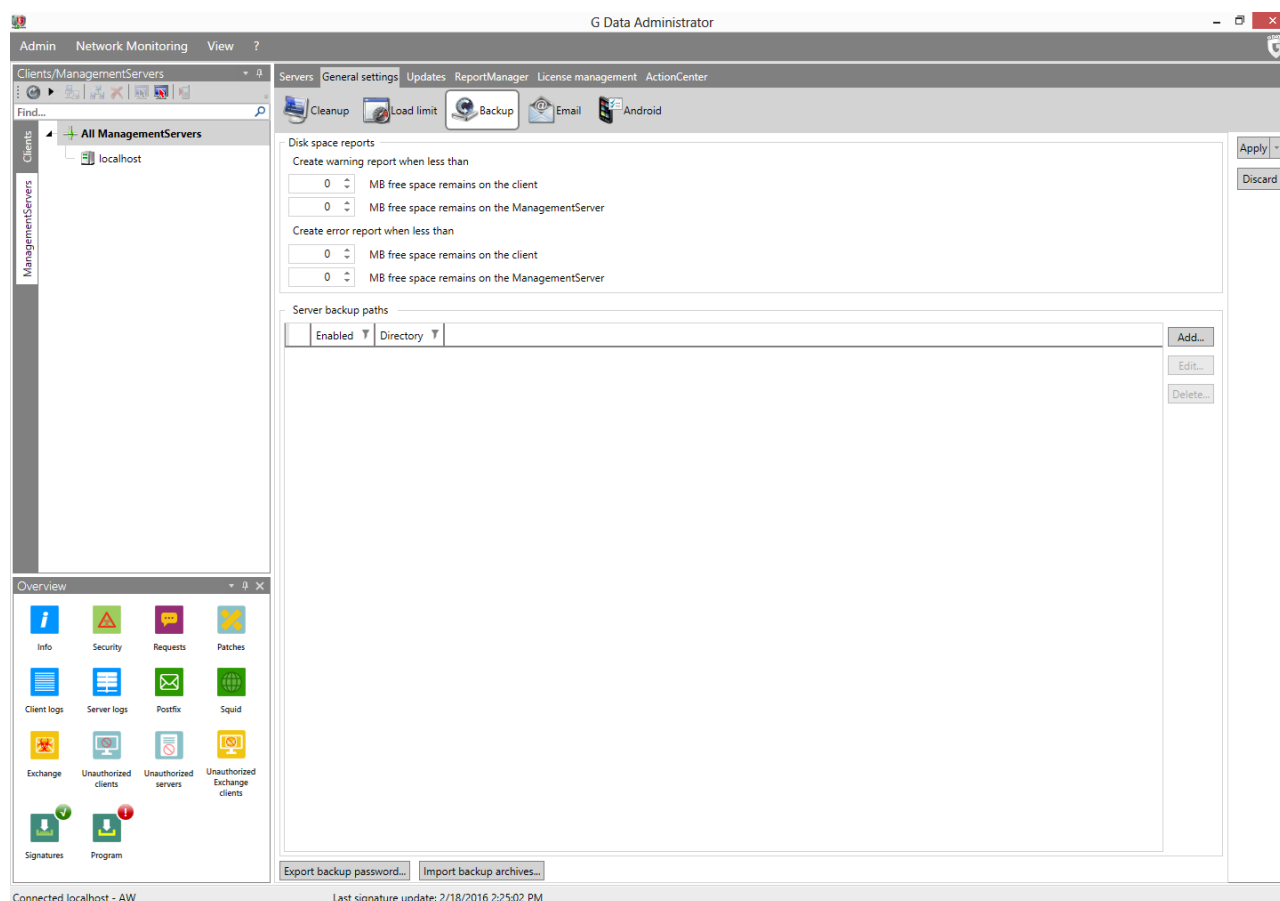


Image 44: G DATA Administrator, General settings, Backup

Backup and restore jobs have individual settings, but there are also a few general options. Most important is setting the storage location. If a large number of backups is scheduled, or more importantly, if they are run often, a large amount of disk space is required. Setting a storage location therefore requires careful planning: storage should be ample and needs to be easily expandable. There are other requirements to storage space. For performance reasons, the target should not be compressed or

encrypted. The backup software already automatically encrypts and compresses data – compressing or encrypting them again on the operating system or hardware level does not add extra security but severely decreases backup performance. The backup target should be a disk dedicated to storing backups, not containing any other files. This allows administrators to easily archive disks physically if required by a company's data retention policy, and prevents confusion between regular files and backups. The default backup target is the server folder %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Backup (from Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008 onwards) or C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\G DATA\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Backup (Windows XP/Windows Server 2003). Because these folders are located on the server's system disk, it is not recommended to use them as a backup target. At least one backup path should be configured, for example another disk in the same machine. When defining multiple paths, G DATA Administrator will automatically save the backup file in the first path that has enough free disk space for the backup file. Additionally, this makes sure the backup target can be easily switched by disabling a path (for example, if there is no disk space left).

In addition to the backup targets, the GENERAL SETTINGS > BACKUP panel offers the possibility to export the backup password. This is recommended, since backup archives are password-protected. When importing backup archives, the password has to be entered or imported from a file, so it should be made sure that the password is exported and saved in a secure location. To import an existing backup archive, click IMPORT BACKUP ARCHIVES. After a folder containing backups has been selected, G DATA Administrator will import its contents and list the backup file(s) in the TASKS lists under the header IMPORTED ARCHIVES. The backups can be restored like any others, using the RESTORE JOB function (see chapter 12.3).

When carrying out a backup job, the client saves the backup in a local cache while it is being transferred to the ManagementServer. When the option USE CLIENT STANDARD PATH is checked, the backup is cached on the partition containing the most free disk space. If that is the system disk, the folder will be %ProgramData%\G Data\Backup; if that is another disk, the directory will be \G Data\Backup. By unchecking the option, a non-standard directory can be configured. This is especially useful to force the cache to be saved on a non-system disk.

To carry out a backup, both client and server need to have enough free disk space available, for the backup cache and backup storage respectively. The GENERAL SETTINGS > BACKUP panel lets you configure threshold values for disk space. When the amount of free disk space on client or server drops below the warning threshold, a warning message will be added to the SECURITY EVENTS module and the client cache will be cleaned up, removing every cached backup that has already been transmitted to the server, except for the latest one. When the amount of free disk space on the client or the server drops below the error threshold, an error message will be added to the SECURITY EVENTS module. Server backup storage and client cache will be automatically cleaned up. If there is still not enough free disk space on the server, backups will not be carried out. The error threshold for client and server should cover the size of one or more of the largest backup jobs that will be carried out, with a margin. The warning threshold should be set higher, so that the administrator is timely notified of impending storage problems.

12.2. Create a backup

As with scan jobs, it is recommended to think of the backup schedule as a whole, instead of planning several unrelated backups. Together, all backup jobs should ensure that documents, settings and other important files are regularly copied to a safe location. But an effective backup schedule depends on more

than that. Data consolidation, client settings and server performance strongly influence the manageability of backup jobs. Before planning any backups, it is recommended to consider these issues and create a unified backup plan.

Depending on the number of files to be backed up, a backup job can take several hours to complete. When planning a full backup, make sure to schedule it at a time where the client is not in use to avoid performance loss. Subsequent partial backups will not involve backing up as much data as the first time, because only new and updated files will be backed up. In that case, scheduling the backup during regular work hours is not problematic. Especially for recurring jobs, making sure the backup moment does not interfere with anything vital. Other backup jobs, PatchManager jobs or scan jobs should not be run concurrently with a planned backup to avoid bringing the system to a halt. When planning a backup for laptop clients, the backup can be postponed when the laptop is running on battery power to avoid burdening the hard drive and draining battery power. It will resume as soon as the laptop is plugged in. When planning a backup of a small number of files, which can be carried out relatively quickly, data security can trump user experience and laptop performance, but in most cases, postponing the backup until the next charge is safe.

Selecting the files to backup is the hardest part of defining a backup job. By default, Windows uses standardized local folders for documents and settings. The BACKUP module offers the option to automatically include all of these user folders in a backup job. Even though this is a form of data consolidation, it is not recommended to make a backup of just the user folders: it may include unnecessary files and waste backup disk space, or miss out on documents that were manually saved elsewhere or in an inaccessible user folder. End user file storage is most easily managed if it is located on a central (file) server. To ease the backup process, it is helpful to make sure data sources are consolidated, both on a client level as well as network-wide. Rather than having to check each client to see if and where documents and settings are stored, saving them in a standardized local folder or on a server share will save time and makes sure that nothing is accidentally left out of the backup. Offering a user-based profile folder on a network share as a default save target for documents will allow administrators to secure files for all end users at once by planning a backup for just the network folder. For smaller networks that may not have a file server, Windows' local consolidation can be useful, but administrators should be aware of its limitations, and make sure that all vital files are indeed successfully backed up.

Aside from the server-side possibility of excluding temporary files from backups, local measures can be used as well to minimize clutter and save disk space. When adding a folder to a backup job, administrators should verify that it only contains the type of files that should be backed up – temporary files, generic system files and other low-priority files should be excluded from the backup, moved to another folder or removed.

The temptation to plan one backup job that includes everything should be resisted. All-inclusive backup jobs waste disk space, take a long time and complicate swift, targeted recovery. Backups can be organized by file type, risk or importance, or a combination thereof. For example, important database files should be backed up regularly, while log files on the same machine can be secured with a larger interval. It can be helpful to take inventory of the types of files that are being produced and used on network clients, how important they are, and how high the risk of data loss is. For each group of files, a separate backup should be planned, its execution interval decreasing for important or high-risk files. See

chapter 12.2.1 and further for suggestions on backup categories, but be sure to include any file that is important to the organization and should not be lost.

During the backup process, all files that are copied are checked for malware. While the archive is being built, it is made sure that no infected files are backed up. This removes the need to plan an additional scan job right before the backup is carried out. To prevent unauthorized access to the files, all backup archives are encrypted, so they cannot simply be opened from the hard drive. This also prevents malware from infecting backup archives. When the backup process finishes archiving all files, the archive integrity is verified to ensure no problems have occurred while building it. The file is then moved from the local cache to the server, which will move it to its final backup target folder.

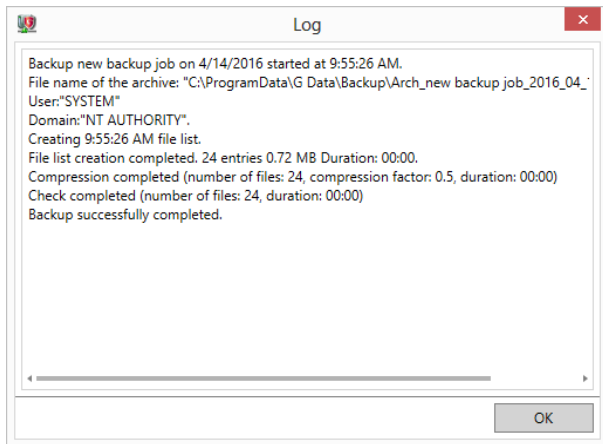


Image 45: G DATA Administrator, Tasks, Backup log

After a backup completes, its log will be available through the appropriate job entry in the **TASKS** module. For each iteration, whether it is a full or a partial backup, a separate log will be created. Files that are in use at the time of backup may not be copied correctly, or disk read errors can cause complications. Therefore, it is recommended to regularly check the logs for each backup to see if it was carried out successfully, and if any additional backups or measures need to be planned.

Additionally, a regular test restore should be planned. To make sure that the backup can be restored correctly, and contains the correct files, a test restore should be carried out to restore the backup to a client or folder of choice. Because the presence of a backup is vital if problems occur on a client, regular test runs or other ways to verify integrity of the backup files are important.

12.2.1. Documents

Arguably the most important type of files to back up is documents. In most organizations, information workers spend a considerable amount of time on producing digital files, such as documents, programs, graphics and other assets. These files often form the core of the production process, and any loss of data could set production back or even directly cause revenue loss. Making sure that those files are safe should be the primary aim of the backup plan.

Documents can be located on clients' hard drives or other local or external storage. This can greatly complicate backups: if there is no centralized document storage, a separate backup job will have to be defined for each client, explicitly covering its local document storage folders. For clients that make use of user profile folders, such as Desktop or My Documents, a backup job can be defined that covers all local

user directories. This will pick up all documents saved in those folders, as well as select settings. Alternatively, a backup job can be created that includes the complete hard drive, but excludes non-document file types (to be defined by extension, such as .exe, .dll or .com). However, the most reliable backup strategy is to control file storage at a much earlier stage. Central file storage, on a network file server for example, allows for a very simple backup job that simply covers that folder tree. By preventing fragmentation at this stage, the chance of missing out on files during the backup stage is greatly reduced.

Job scheduling for document backups depends on the frequency with which the clients are used. In most cases, the client will be used daily, so a daily backup should be performed. Only sporadically, the backup frequency should be reduced to once every two or three days. The first backup should be a full backup, carried out at a specific point in time when the client is not in use. The full backup will consist of all files, and therefore be relatively large. Subsequent backups can be configured as partial backups. This type of backup (also known as differential backup) saves only the files that have been changed since the last full backup. This saves a significant amount of time in making the backup, and uses less disk space on the backup targets. Restoring the backup will take slightly longer, because it has to be rebuilt from multiple files (the original full backup, and the latest partial backup). If this is a problem, the subsequent daily backups can also be full backups. However, the required storage space will quickly escalate. In that case, configuring a weekly full backup and daily partial backup is the recommended scenario.

12.2.2. Databases

In many IT-powered organizations, certain types of information are stored centrally. This can range from a centrally managed workflow environment to contact databases, sales information or other assets concerning the organization's production. Another important database is the mail server's message storage. In case of a disk failure, the single database containing all of organization's critical emails, contacts or product information could be wiped out. To ensure data security, backups should be configured to make sure that the complete database is regularly backed up to a safe location.

Backing up databases can be complicated. Depending on the type of database, its files may be in use continuously. An email database, for example, will not be accessible to the backup process for as long as the email server is running. At the time of backup, make sure that the database files are not in use. Shut down any running processes that make use of the database, as well as background services. For many types of databases this may cause a significant service disruption. In those cases, a backup should be carried out during an existing maintenance window, for example on the weekend or during the night, when there is little to no activity.

How often a database backup should be carried out, depends on how the databases are being used. For vital information that is updated regularly or constantly, such as email databases, a daily backup is recommended. The first backup is a full backup; subsequent ones should be partial backups, to prevent backup storage space from filling up quickly. Databases that are less regularly used can be backed up weekly. In this case, it is easier to plan the backup: there will be less service interruption if a weekly maintenance window can be used.

Some databases can be easily backed up with a file-based backup solution like G DATA's backup module, while others have built-in backup tools. Whether you are using G DATA's backup module or a built-in

database backup tool, it is vital that backups are made regularly and that their integrity is verified to make sure they can be successfully restored if the need arises.

12.2.3. Configuration

Over time, a client's configuration can start to significantly differ from how it was initially rolled out. End users often change their preferences in the operating system and third party software, or administrators deploy changed configurations to take care of local issues. Losing configuration settings can cause annoyance when a significant amount of time is required to reconfigure a system after a disk failure. Making backups of configuration files helps reduce the time needed to reconfigure a system after a reinstall.

Locating all configuration files on a client can be tricky. Some settings are saved in files (typically ending in .ini), others are saved in the Windows Registry, which cannot easily be backed up. For software that supports it, saving settings centrally (either in a central configuration file or using a method such as Microsoft group policies) can prevent a lengthy process to identify the correct files and simplifies backup. In addition, this makes it easier to roll out configuration changes and default settings for multiple clients at once. For smaller networks, administrators may choose to manually identify which software is currently installed on clients, and where its configuration is saved. The Software inventory (CLIENTS module) can assist here in finding information about software on the clients, but it will require a considerable amount of time to locate the configuration files. For those that can be located, a backup can be planned. A backup frequency of once a month will cover most situations, but for clients that are reconfigured more regularly, a weekly or daily backup is also a possibility.

12.2.4. System files

Backups do not only need to focus on files that were generated by an end user. Executable files and other components that belong to an operating system or third party program can be backed up as well. As with database backups, the process can be difficult, as many system files are continuously in use. An additional problem is the fact that a software backup often cannot function on its own. Backing up a client's Program Files folder does not take into account the many dependencies, such as other software, frameworks or certain operating system features or updates. Restoring such a backup to an empty system does not guarantee that the software will work.

To make backups of software, a better solution is to safeguard the original installers and save them on a server. As for the operating system itself, the restore process can be simplified by making sure there is always a full system image available of the operating system with its latest updates and all the third party software that is typically used. This image resembles a backup, but does not include any user documents. Instead, it is built from a 'clean' operating installation with its latest updates, and all required software. Keeping this image up to date requires some effort, but greatly reduces the amount of time needed to restore a full system. This works best in a scenario where clients do not save any personal data locally, but on a file server instead: a client disk failure does not cause any data loss, and an operating system image can quickly be restored once a new hard disk is in place.

12.2.5. Backup on demand

Backups can be carried out manually, instead of according to a schedule. This can be useful for scenarios where a client is typically not backed up at all, due to its low importance or low risk of data loss.

Alternatively, if an impending hardware failure seems to threaten a client's stability, a backup on demand can quickly save data before the client fails. This type of backup jobs can be planned ahead, to enable a quick response time in case of emergency. However, as a job cannot be assigned to another client than it was initially planned for, there is no way to prepare a single emergency backup job. The BACKUP JOB window is fairly simple and allows administrators to quickly define the necessary measures if a backup on demand should be planned.

12.3. Restore a backup

When disaster strikes, it is important to have a recent backup available. When the backup jobs have been properly scheduled, data loss will be minimal. Restoring data is relatively simple, compared to planning the backups. The minimum requirement is a working installation of the operating system and G DATA Security Client (which both may have to be reinstalled, in case of a complete disk failure).

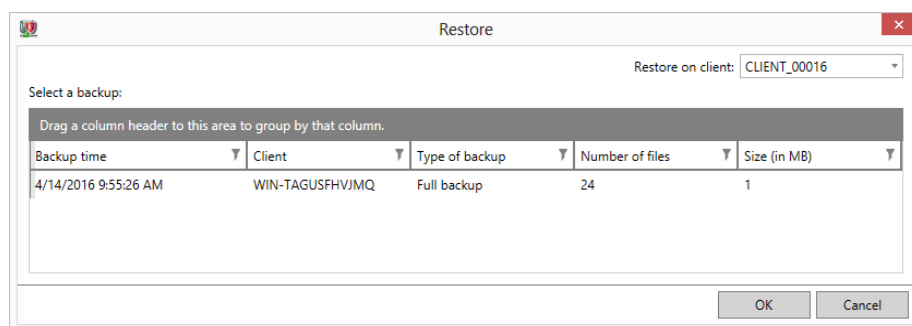


Image 46: G DATA Administrator, Tasks, Restore backup

Select the client in the CLIENTS view and open the TASKS module to view all existing backup jobs for the client. Right click on a job and click RESTORE BACKUP to open the RESTORE window. Alternatively, select the ManagementServer, open the TASKS menu and choose ADD > RESTORE JOB to get an overview of available backups across all clients. Select a backup and click OK to open the RESTORE JOB window. Upon confirming the recovery settings, a Restore job will be added to the TASKS module. It will be carried out immediately.

If storage is limited, administrators can manually move backup archives to different locations. To be able to restore them, however, they need to be reimported into G DATA Administrator. Under GENERAL SETTINGS > BACKUP, the IMPORT BACKUP ARCHIVES button will let administrators import backup archive files from any folder. The backup password will have to be entered, which is available through the EXPORT BACKUP PASSWORD button on the ManagementServer that created the backup. The imported backups will show up in the backups list in the TASKS module.

Restore jobs can be planned to restore a system to the state in which it was when the backup was made. This applies mainly to backups of configuration or system files. In this case, all files should be restored to their original folders, overwriting existing files if necessary. Databases and documents, on the other hand, can be selectively restored, to provide the client only with the necessary files. The FILE SELECTION tab can be used to browse through the backup archive and include or exclude any files or folders. In case a

file has been accidentally deleted, a backup archive can be used to locate the most recent backup of that file alone and restore it.

A backup does not necessarily need to be restored to the client it was created from. Any backup can be restored to any client, provided it has enough free disk space. With the appropriate backup selected, the **RESTORE** window offers the **RESTORE ON CLIENT** dropdown through which any client can be selected. In the following window, the files that should be restored to that particular client can be selected. This allows administrators to create a backup of a client of a specific network role and restore to it to other clients in the same role.

It is recommended to test backup archives after the first backup run, to see if the backup settings led to all files being included correctly, and if the backup archive functions. Right click on the backup job and choose **RESTORE BACKUP** to open the **RESTORE** window. Verify that the backup archive is listed and click **OK** to open the **RESTORE JOB** window. To verify if all files were there, the file and folder list can be used. To check if the backup can be restored without problems, configure it to restore all files and define a new target directory on the **OPTIONS** tab.

13. Firewall

The Firewall module is part of the Client Security Business, Endpoint Protection Business and Managed Endpoint Security solutions.

The firewall is an essential component of network security. As the first line of defense, firewalls filter inbound and outbound data traffic. This ensures that attackers cannot remotely access services that are running on a machine, and that software on the machine cannot contact outside servers. Through the use of a whitelist (firewall rules), certain outside visitors can be granted access, and certain local software can be allowed to contact outside servers. Depending on the network layout (see chapter 1), a firewall can be a hardware device or a software solution. A physical firewall filters all traffic coming in and going out of the network. Many routers, enterprise-grade as well as low-end ones, have a built-in firewall. Software solutions, on the other hand, can be installed on a server or client and provide protection on the machine level. Each network should at least have one firewall active that keeps unwanted traffic out. For all enterprise networks, enabling a firewall as the first layer of network security is recommended. Additionally, clients should be provided with a software firewall. This allows for a granular control over application permissions. Instead of blocking certain traffic for the whole network, in- and outbound network traffic can be managed by defining rules for individual clients or network zones.

Firewall rules should be coordinated centrally, and be configured according to the company's security policies. Across all deployed firewalls, whether hardware- or software-based, rules should be harmonized to prevent conflicts. The firewall rules serve two purposes: managing network security and maintaining company policies (that may not necessarily have anything to do with security). For inbound traffic, defining firewall rules is relatively easy: all traffic should be dropped unless it was requested by an end user or program (for example, surfing the web or initiating a peer to peer download). It is purely a security issue, where non-requested traffic is considered to be a malicious connection attempt. For outbound traffic, the rules get more complicated. Some software and services can be denied outbound traffic because it may form a security risk. Others are not malicious, but do not comply with company policy. For example, outbound traffic for a chat program is not malicious, but should still be blocked if company policy states that chats are not allowed.

The centrally managed client firewall rules are enforced by the firewall module of G DATA Security Client. It filters all network traffic that is coming in and going out, making sure that unauthorized communication is blocked. G DATA Firewall uses stateful inspection to filter network traffic. This method does not only compare single packets to a predefined set of rules, but also considers the previous packets that were exchanged with the same server or computer. This way, packets that are transmitted in an existing TCP stream or UDP connection do not need to be completely examined again, but can be filtered based on the state of the connection (such as IP addresses or ports that have been used previously). This reduces the amount of processing power needed per packet, and makes sure that administrators and end users can quickly define rules to allow a type of connection, without having to worry about the exact IP address, port number, or packet direction.

The firewall module included in G DATA Security Client is meant to be used on client machines. While the client and all its protection modules (such as the file system monitor and the firewall) can be installed on servers without problems, the predefined rule sets are aimed at client machines. For use on a server, administrators have to make sure that an appropriate rule set is defined.

13.1. Managing firewall clients

G DATA Firewall can be managed through its own module in G DATA Administrator. The FIREWALL tab shows all relevant options, applicable to the clients that have been selected in the CLIENTS view. As with other modules, firewall settings can be applied to one or more clients at the same time.

It is generally recommended to enable G DATA Firewall at least on all clients that connect to the internet, and ideally on all clients in the network. Only if an alternative client firewall is being used should G DATA Firewall not be enabled, in order to prevent conflicts. From version 14 onwards, clients that do not yet have the firewall component installed, need to be updated to the new version before the firewall can be enabled.

To keep an eye on client activity, enable REPORT BLOCKED APPLICATIONS. This will make sure that every time an application is blocked, G DATA Firewall sends a report to the ManagementServer, which will be displayed in the SECURITY EVENTS module. If a client application gets blocked by one of the firewall rules, the report will show the offending application and allow administrators to directly add it to one of the rule sets if necessary. As with virus alerts, repeated firewall reports may indicate that an end user is misusing a machine, or that a part of his job cannot be carried out because of usability limitations.

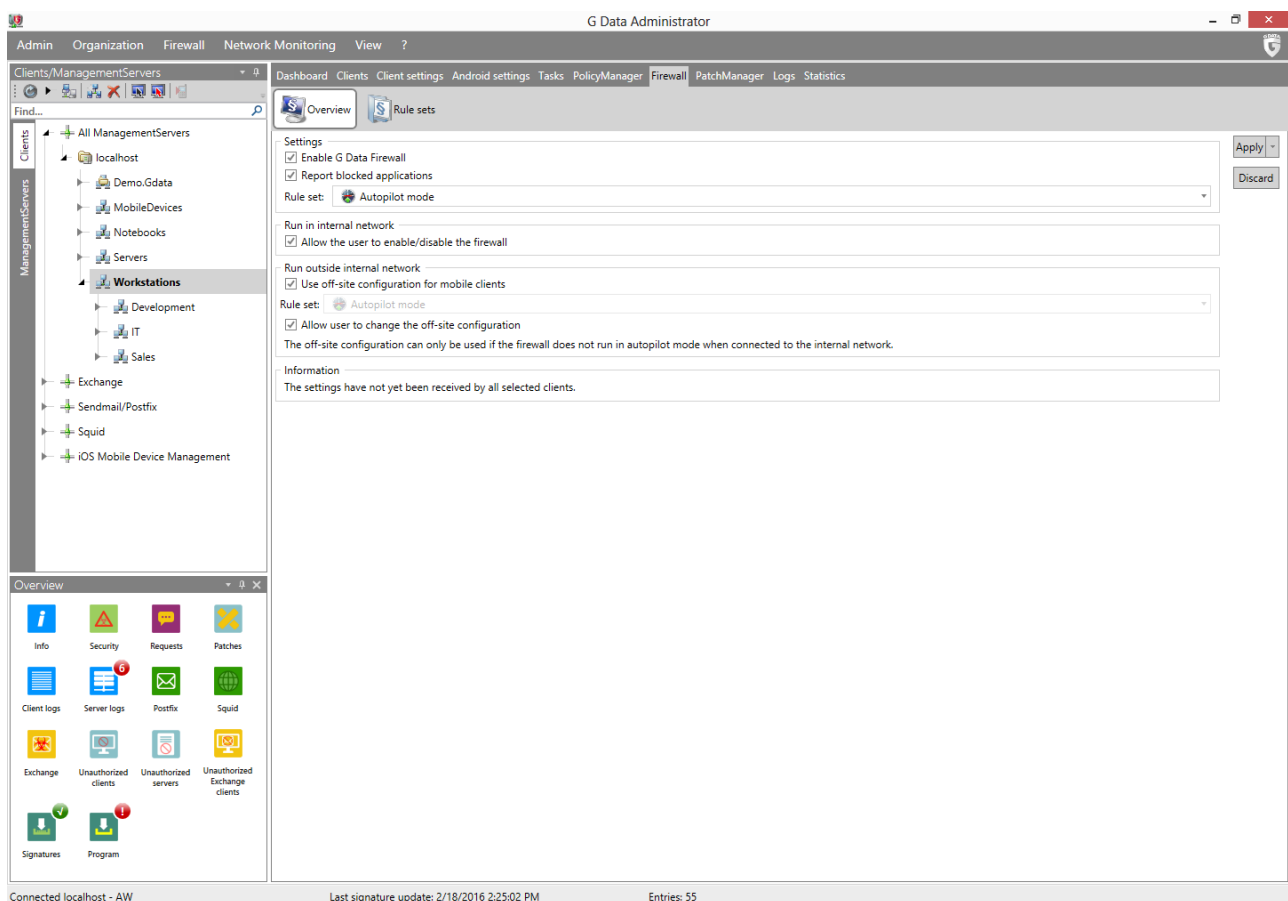


Image 47: G DATA Administrator, Firewall, Overview

Per client or group, an off-site rule set can be enabled. Enabling a specific off-site configuration is particularly useful for clients that are regularly used outside the enterprise network. G DATA Firewall will make use of the normal configuration as long as the client is connected to the enterprise network, but will switch to the off-site configuration as soon as the machine connects to another network. This

ensures security policy compliance for the enterprise network, while allowing an end user more flexibility when the machine is used elsewhere. An off-site rule set can only be enabled if the client is using a rule set for the enterprise network; using the autopilot mode prohibits the use of off-site configuration.

13.2. Autopilot

Autopilot is G DATA Firewall's default setting for all clients. This option configures the firewall to carry out its tasks completely in the background. End users will not be confronted with any prompts and administrators will only have to carry out a minimum number of management tasks. Autopilot is very light on management, and can be deployed in networks where only a minimal number of third party applications is used, or where the software inventory is relatively stable. Inbound and outbound connections are automatically evaluated and allowed or blocked. If software tries to establish an outbound connection, the firewall allows the connection if the process is not detected as malware. For the first two outbound connection attempts, a temporary rule allowing the traffic through the firewall is established. If the same process attempts to open an outbound connection for the third time, a rule is added to the autopilot rule set to permanently allow the software. Inbound connections are always dropped, unless they are part of communication initiated by one of the processes on the system.

By keeping an eye on the SECURITY EVENTS module, administrators can check how often the firewall blocks applications. If it turns out that the autopilot mode prohibits essential outbound or inbound connection attempts, switching affected clients to the manual rule set mode is recommended. The same goes for laptop clients: machines that are often used outside the enterprise network, should be switched to manual rule sets to allow for off-site configuration capabilities.

13.3. Rule sets

When not using the autopilot mode, administrators have a wide range of possibilities to configure the firewall. G DATA Firewall makes use of rule sets: collections of application-, protocol- and port-based rules that control the network data flow from and to clients. Rule sets allow for fine-grained control over network traffic, but require more time to be configured than autopilot mode. Administrators should be familiar with network layout, protocols and applications before attempting to configure the firewall using a custom rule set. After a rule set has been created, it can be assigned to one or more clients by opening the OVERVIEW panel and configuring it as regular or off-site rule set.

The RULE SETS panel is used to create and edit rule sets for the entire network. At the top of the panel, the RULE SET dropdown list shows all rule sets that have been defined. By default, the firewall is operating in autopilot mode without any defined rule sets. Click NEW to add a new rule set. Creating a new rule set requires entering a name. Optionally, a note can be added to further describe the set (for example, for which clients it is meant, or if any specific applications, protocols or parts are included). Check STEALTH MODE ENABLED to prohibit clients to respond to port probes, further increasing security. Finally, firewall rules can be selected from the default rule set. This set contains rules for many common applications, including Windows- and Microsoft-specific functions, but also third party software such as Adobe Reader and Mozilla Firefox. Selecting rules for applications that are in use in the network saves time, but it should be ensured that only the most necessary communication is allowed. Clicking OK creates the new rule set, including the chosen rules. Next to the rule set list, the EDIT button allows for editing of name and

note. The **IMPORT** and **EXPORT** button can be used to save and import rule sets, useful for rule set backups or for predefined rules to be added easily.

Rule sets contain an arbitrary number of rules, either pre-defined, custom, or created in response to a report. Connections are evaluated against every rule in the rule set. Rules are listed in order of priority (rank): for each connection attempt, the rule at rank 1 trumps the rule at rank 2, which trumps the rule at rank 3, etcetera. This allows for granular control of ports and protocols, for example to allow UDP traffic on port 2000 in rule 1 and dropping all other UDP traffic in rule 2. Using the **RANK** controls to the right of the list, rules can be moved to other positions on the list. To disable a rule within a rule set, uncheck the checkbox next to its name or edit the rule and uncheck the option **RULE ENABLED**.

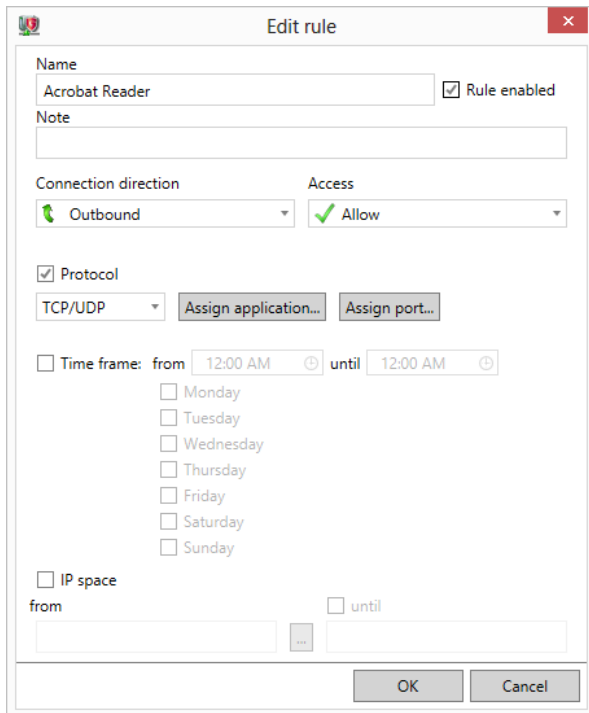


Image 48: G DATA Administrator, Firewall, Rule sets, New rule

New rules can be added manually using the **NEW** button, or using the Rule wizard by clicking the **WIZARD** button. The wizard can be used to add a rule from the default rule set to the selected rule set, copy an existing rule, grant or deny access for a specific application, or open or close a specific port. Manually adding a new rule is most useful when the wizard does not allow enough flexibility, for example when rules should be valid for a specific time frame only. Every rule consists of several components. The basic information that is required is the connection direction and access type. Firewall rules can be set for inbound, outbound, or inbound/outbound connections. Some applications could be allowed to send packets only, while for others, network access can be blocked completely. In addition to the basic information, one or more from the following properties should be selected: **PROTOCOL**, **TIME FRAME** or **IP SPACE**. The protocol dropdown contains several protocols for which traffic can be filtered by the firewall. Additionally, a specific application and/or port can be defined. The **APPLICATIONS** popup window allows very specific control over the application that should be blocked or allowed. It can be used to simply filter one or more applications' traffic, or to block or allow an application's traffic only if it was started by a specific parent process. The **PORTS** window lets administrators add single ports or port ranges to the rule. The **TIME FRAME** option can be used to limit the rule to a specific time of the day or to specific days of the

week. This can be useful for both security purposes and company policies. Finally, the `IP SPACE` option can be used to add an (external) IP or IP range to which traffic should be limited. This can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address, a DNS server, a default gateway server or a WINS server.

Deceptively simple, the `NEW RULE` window can be used to create sophisticated firewall rules. Which rules should be created exactly, depends on the specific network configuration, software inventory, security demands and company policies. Rules from the default rule set can be a great starting point, but almost every rule set will need some fine tuning before it can be deployed to the complete network. Accidentally blocking important traffic can be extremely impractical for end users. While developing a rule set, therefore, it is recommended to test the set on one client before deploying it further. Make sure that communication between the client and its ManagementServer is not interrupted, because that will make troubleshooting significantly more difficult.

As a general guideline, it is recommended to configure the firewall to operate in a “whitelist mode”: define rules for known applications only and block all other traffic. This can be achieved by inserting rules at the end of the rule set to block all traffic on all protocols and ports. Every connection attempt that is not covered by one of the other rules will be blocked. While highly secure, this rule set mode can be tricky to configure because it is very hard to predict all types of traffic that a client will generate. A certain amount of time will be required to figure out the normal usage pattern of a client PC and the rules that will have to be configured to cover the intended behavior. One method is designating one client to be a rule set testing ground. This client should have most if not all of the software installed that is in use on the network. Starting with rules from the default rule set, the client can be used to gauge network traffic needs and add the appropriate permissions. The Firewall log can be very helpful to get an in-depth view of connection attempts (see chapter 13.5).

Before rolling out any rule sets, it should be made sure that each network zone has its own rule set with the appropriate rules. Rule sets should contain only rules for the communication needs of the specific network zone and its clients. Granting too many applications network access can be a security risk. At the same time, the number of rule sets should be manageable: the more rule sets are defined, the more time will be required to troubleshoot traffic permission problems across the network. For the same reason, rules should be deleted from rule sets if they are no longer being used. For example, when a software product is retired and is no longer used on the network, its corresponding rule(s) should be removed from the firewall rule set. Keeping the rule set clean allows for a better overview over the existing rules and eases troubleshooting.

13.4. End user permissions

A firewall is an essential layer in network security, but at the same time can hinder end user activity on a client machine, if it blocks an essential application. Administrators can move part of the responsibility of firewall management to the end user, by allowing them to enable or disable the firewall, or to change the off-site configuration rule set. This can be practical, because it lets the end user immediately fix permission problems, but dangerous as well: company security policies can be bypassed if the end user is allowed to change rule sets or to disable the firewall completely. It is recommended to proceed with caution and only set these options for problematic client deployments or end users who know what they are doing.

End users can access firewall settings through G DATA Security Client. A right-click on the tray icon reveals the **FIREWALL** option, which leads to the G DATA Firewall interface where rule sets can be edited (if the option to do so is enabled and the client is being used off-site). The firewall can be disabled by clicking **DISABLE FIREWALL**. This will disable the firewall without further warning. It will not be re-enabled automatically, so the disabled state persists across restarts. This option should therefore be used with extreme caution: there is hardly any use case in which the end user should be granted such permissions.

13.5. Logs

The firewall component reports blocked applications to G DATA Administrator. However, it can be useful to have a more advanced view of inbound and outbound connections. If an application is inexplicably blocked, or if statistics about dropped inbound connections should be obtained, the local firewall log can help. If end users should have the possibility to view detailed logs, the administrator can enable the checkbox **ALLOW THE USER TO CHANGE THE OFF-SITE CONFIGURATION**. This will add a **FIREWALL** option to G DATA Security Client's system tray context menu. Clicking **FIREWALL** leads to the main interface of the firewall component. The **Log** panel shows a detailed overview of all incoming and outgoing connections. The end user can check the connection protocol, initiating application, direction, local port, remote host, remote port and reason for the decision about allowing or blocking the connection.

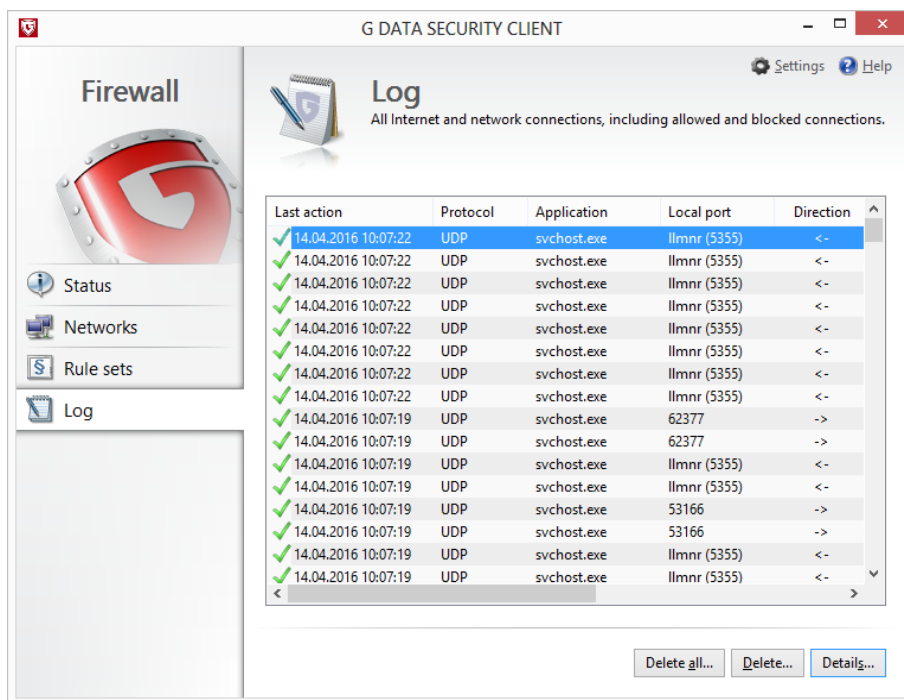


Image 49: G DATA Security Client, Firewall, Log

If the logs are not meant to be used by end users, the administrator can keep blocking the firewall interface and instead directly access the log files themselves. Note that this is an advanced view, which can be overwhelming. The firewall log is saved as a SQLite database file. This file format can be read by a number of database browsers, such as SQLite Database Browser (www.sf.net/projects/sqlitebrowser/). The connection log is stored in the database file `LiveStrm.dat`, typically located in `C:\Program Files (x86)\G Data\AVKClient\Firewall`. The database contains several tables; the connection log is located in

the table `Connections`. Each entry is one connection, and its properties are listed in several columns. The table below lists the most important columns and their descriptions.

Column	Description
AdapterID	Network adapter ID.
AdapterName	Network adapter name.
Allowed	The connection was allowed (-1) or blocked (0).
HasProcess	The process ID that initiated the connection. Can be used to compare against a list of running services.
IPv6	The connection uses the IPv6 protocol (-1) or IPv4 (0).
LocalPort	The local connection port.
Outgoing	The connection was inbound (-1) or outbound (0).
ProcName	The process that initiated the connection. Can be used to compare against a list of running services.
Protocol	The connection protocol ¹⁶ .
Reason	A numerical value representing the reason for the decision about allowing or blocking the connection.
RemoteHost	The remote host.
RemoteIP	The remote IP address.
RemotePort	The remote connection port.
RuleID	The ID of the rule that governed the decision about allowing or blocking the connection. Corresponds to the ID in one of the rule tables of the SQLite database <code>GDFwSvc.dat</code> .

The column `REASON` displays a numeric value for each connection. This value provides additional information about why the connection was allowed or blocked. The value that occurs most often is 7 (`REASON_RULE_MATCH`), meaning that the connection matched a rule in one of the defined rule sets. The complete list of values is as follows:

Value	Reason
0	<code>REASON_FILTER_OFF</code>
1	<code>REASON_FLUSHED</code>
2	<code>REASON_ASK_USER_CACHE</code>
3	<code>REASON_ASK_USER_WRONG_CHECKSUM</code>
4	<code>REASON_ASK_USER</code>
5	<code>REASON_ASK_USER_NO_FRONTEND</code>
6	<code>REASON_ASK_USER_NO_PROCESS</code>
7	<code>REASON_RULE_MATCH</code>
8	<code>REASON_RULE_MATCH_WRONG_CHECKSUM</code>
9	<code>REASON_SKIP_ID</code>
10	<code>REASON_SUBSEQUENTLY</code>
11	<code>REASON_BY_CONNECTION</code>
12	<code>REASON_ENDPOINT_DOES_NOT_EXIST</code>
13	<code>REASON_ADAPTIVE_MODE</code>
14	<code>REASON_ANSWER_FROM_OUTGOING</code>
15	<code>REASON_RULESET_DEFAULT</code>
16	<code>REASON_ANSWER_FROM_INCOMING</code>

¹⁶ The protocol number can be looked up in IANA's database of protocol numbers (www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers).

17	REASON_RULE_MATCH_WRONG_PARENT_CHECKSUM
18	REASON_RULE_MATCH_UNMATCHING_PARENT
19	REASON_ASK_USER_WRONG_PARENT_CHECKSUM
20	REASON_ASK_USER_UNMATCHING_PARENT
21	REASON_PROCESS_DIED
22	REASON_TCP_ENDPOINT_IS_NOT_LISTENING
23	REASON_RULE_MATCH_WRONG_MODULE_CHECKSUM
24	REASON_JUST_OUTGOING
25	REASON_DHCP_POLICY
27	REASON_FIREWALL_OFF
28	REASON_ICS
29	REASON_WRONG_CHECKSUM_COMMITTED_BY_AV
30	REASON_AUTOPILOT

14. PolicyManager

PolicyManager is part of the Endpoint Protection Business and Managed Endpoint Security solutions.

Security layers such as firewall, file system monitor or on demand protection block infection attempts and provide end users with a safe computing environment without malware. However, many enterprise policies define other types of content that should not be accessible. Inappropriate content is often blocked, applications are blacklisted or internet access is limited. Similarly, the use of external devices with enterprise clients is often limited, by prohibiting the use of USB sticks. All these measures have in common that they are not only configured for network safety, but also to enforce client usage policies. G DATA's PolicyManager unifies these approaches in an easy-to-use module that can be used to configure clients for exactly the type of use they are meant for.

Before defining any policies, administrators should work out a full overview of the client roles in the network and the desired number of privileges for end users. Clients that are used in the IT department, for example, will have other permissions than sales or R&D. At the same time, there can be enterprise-wide rules that should be applied to all clients: if the company has defined general security policies, they can help in building the corresponding PolicyManager rules. An enterprise-wide USB stick ban, for example, is easy to implement using PolicyManager's **DEVICE CONTROL** panel. **APPLICATION CONTROL**, **DEVICE CONTROL** and **WEB CONTENT CONTROL** can be combined to create rules that ensure that no sensitive data can leave the enterprise network, be it via file sharing applications, USB sticks or cloud storage.

PolicyManager can be used to restrict several aspects of client usage, but the ability for end users to effectively use the PC should not be limited. As with all other aspects of security, policies should not be immediately deployed to all clients. To properly gauge its effects, every policy change should be tested on one or more test clients. Only if it functions as intended, it should be added to the default policy for all clients.

The PolicyManager module is divided into four panels: **APPLICATION CONTROL**, **DEVICE CONTROL**, **WEB CONTENT CONTROL** and **INTERNET USAGE TIME**. Each of them controls a specific aspect of client use and can be enabled or disabled on its own. As usual, settings apply to the clients that are selected in the **CLIENTS** view.

PolicyManager modules can be enabled for normal client end users, or for normal client end users and administrators. The latter setting is recommended for optimal security, specifically if local administrators should not be able to circumvent the policy rules.

14.1. Applications

In security as well as policy, allowing end users to run any applications on a client can be a source of problems. Software from an unknown source can contain malware. Furthermore, a large group of applications could be designated as unwanted software. In most enterprise scenarios, for example, end users do not need peer-to-peer download software. Instant messaging applications are another type of software that is often blocked. Application control allows administrators to manage and enforce application rules using a blacklist or whitelist, configurable per client.

Before any decisions about application whitelisting or blacklisting can be made, administrators should be aware of the software that is running on network clients. The list of software does not only include packages that have been officially deployed. If there are no restrictions in place as to the installation of

new software, end users may have installed any applications. To gain an overview of the software that is in use on a client, use the **CLIENTS** module. Its **SOFTWARE** panel shows all programs that have been installed on a client. This information can be used to decide which applications are allowed and which ones are not. Software can be preliminarily sorted by using the software inventory's blacklist and whitelist functions. For each program, decide whether it should be allowed on client PCs or not. Right-click the entry and choose **ADD TO WHITELIST** or **ADD TO BLACKLIST**. The buttons **GLOBAL BLACKLIST** and **GLOBAL WHITELIST** show the respective lists, which can then be used as basis for decision making in the **APPLICATION CONTROL** module. Pay attention to the **VENDOR** column, as the vendor name can be used to create a blacklist or whitelist rule in PolicyManager.

In order for Application control to function correctly, the file system monitor component of G DATA Security Client needs to be enabled (see chapter 8.2.1). Per client, the choice can be made whether Application control should function in blacklist or whitelist mode. In the blacklist mode, all applications that are defined in the application list will be blocked when an end user tries to run them. Whitelist mode only allows the applications on the list to be run and blocks all others. Even though it is possible to define a different mode for different clients, it is recommended to use the same mode for all clients to make management easier. Whitelist mode is the most secure mode: only applications that are deemed safe can be run. However, defining a whitelist requires administrators to carry out some tests before deploying the policy, as they should find out about every program that should be allowed in order to avoid end users encountering blockades while trying to work. Blacklist mode is the alternative: administrators will only have to define programs that they do not want to allow. The downside of a blacklist is that it does not automatically take care of programs that were not known to the administrator at the time the blacklist was defined. If an end user installs a program by themselves, it is not automatically blocked when running in blacklist mode.

Adding a new rule is not complicated and can either be defined by vendor, file or directory. A vendor rule blocks or allows executable files based on their vendor string. Especially when using whitelist mode, make sure that at least the operating system and G DATA security components can be loaded properly by adding a vendor rule with the string **Microsoft*** or **G DATA***, or by using the respective default rules. If a vendor should be generally blocked, with the exception of one or more programs, their executables or folders can be defined as an exception to that specific rule. File rules can be added by entering properties of the file to be blocked, such as file name, MD5 checksum, product name, file version or copyright. These fields can be entered manually, or populated automatically by using the **DETERMINE FILE ATTRIBUTES** option. This will allow an administrator to select the actual file to make sure the properties are entered correctly. The beginning or end of any of the property strings can be followed by an asterisk. This is especially useful when blocking only a certain version range. A directory rule lets administrators select any folder from which executables should be blocked or allowed, optionally including subfolders.

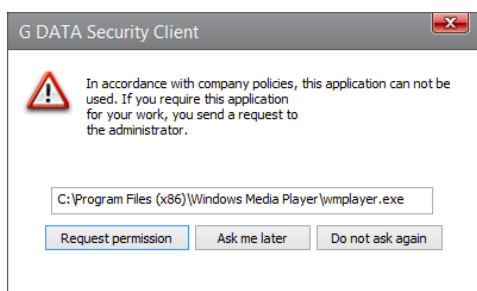


Image 50: G DATA Security Client, Application control

When all rules have been defined and Application control has been enabled for the appropriate clients, it is recommended to test if all rules work correctly. When an end user tries to start a blocked application, G DATA Security Client will automatically prevent access. If the administrator enabled the option **ALLOW THE USER TO REPORT BLOCKED APPLICATIONS**, Security Client will present a popup with application details. The button **REQUEST PERMISSION** will add a report to the **SECURITY EVENTS** module of G DATA Administrator. Using this report, the administrator can directly add a new rule to Application control, whitelisting the app if the end user should be able to use it. Leaving this option disabled is recommended for clients where applications should be blocked without user interaction or feedback.

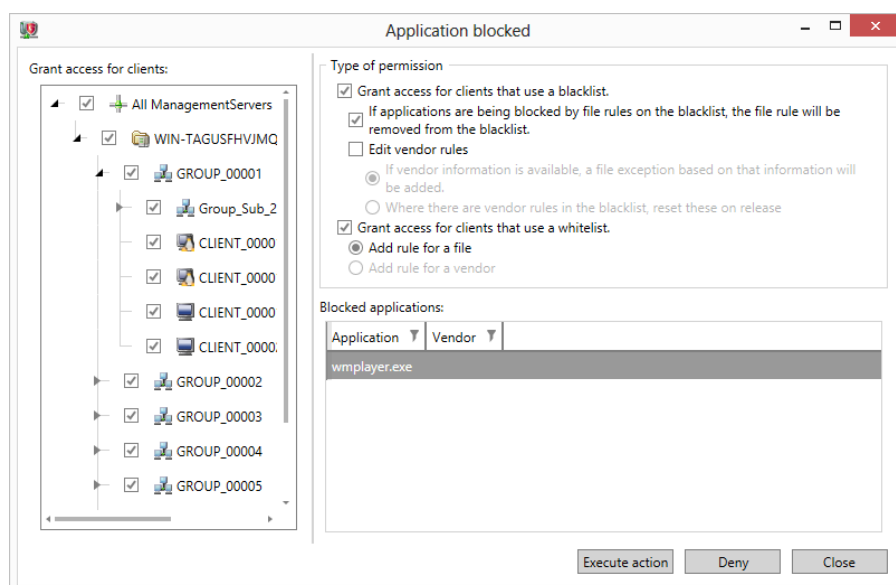


Image 51: G DATA Administrator, Security events, Application blocked

The report that Application control adds to the **SECURITY EVENTS** module allows for some flexibility in defining a rule. The application that was blocked is listed in the bottom right corner. On the left, the client(s) for which the new rule should be made can be selected. By default, this is the client from which the report was sent, but applications can be white- or blacklisted for any of the network clients. The **TYPE OF PERMISSION** can be tweaked both for blacklist and whitelist modes. For clients that are using a blacklist, the rule that blocks the affected application can be removed. If it is being blocked by a vendor rule, the file can be added as an exception to that rule, or the rule as a whole can be removed. For clients that use a whitelist, the program can be added as a file rule or a vendor rule.

14.2. Devices

Most malicious threats originate from the internet, but removable devices remain a very popular attack vector for malware. Removable storage media like USB sticks and CD-ROMs can contain viruses, but administrators should not only worry about attacks: sensitive files could also be leaving the enterprise network through removable media, for example when an employee copies an important database to a USB stick. Another delicate device category is webcams, which are often built into laptops but can be disabled for privacy reasons. The **DEVICE CONTROL** panel allows administrators control over these device categories across all network clients.

Per device category, the administrator can define access rights. These are the same for floppy disk, CD/DVD, removable storage media and web cam: **READ/WRITE**, **READ**, or **DENY ACCESS**. By selecting **READ/WRITE**,

users are allowed full access to the selected device(s). READ access is a useful option for situations where end users need to be able to copy data onto a client, but should not be allowed to copy data from it. DENY ACCESS is the best option if a device needs to be blocked completely. This is the most secure feature: devices cannot infect clients with malware, and they cannot be used to transport data out of the enterprise network.

Blocking device categories completely is the easiest part of using DEVICE CONTROL. However, there can be circumstances where end users or administrators want to use a device locally, in spite of a network-wide ban. Rather than enabling READ or READ/WRITE access for all devices in a category, the whitelist feature lets administrators define specific devices that can be used. If a device category has been set to READ or DENY ACCESS, the whitelist can be used to add READ or READ/WRITE permissions to a specific device or medium. Before rolling out a device policy, essential device or medium permissions should be whitelisted, to make sure that no workflows are interrupted.

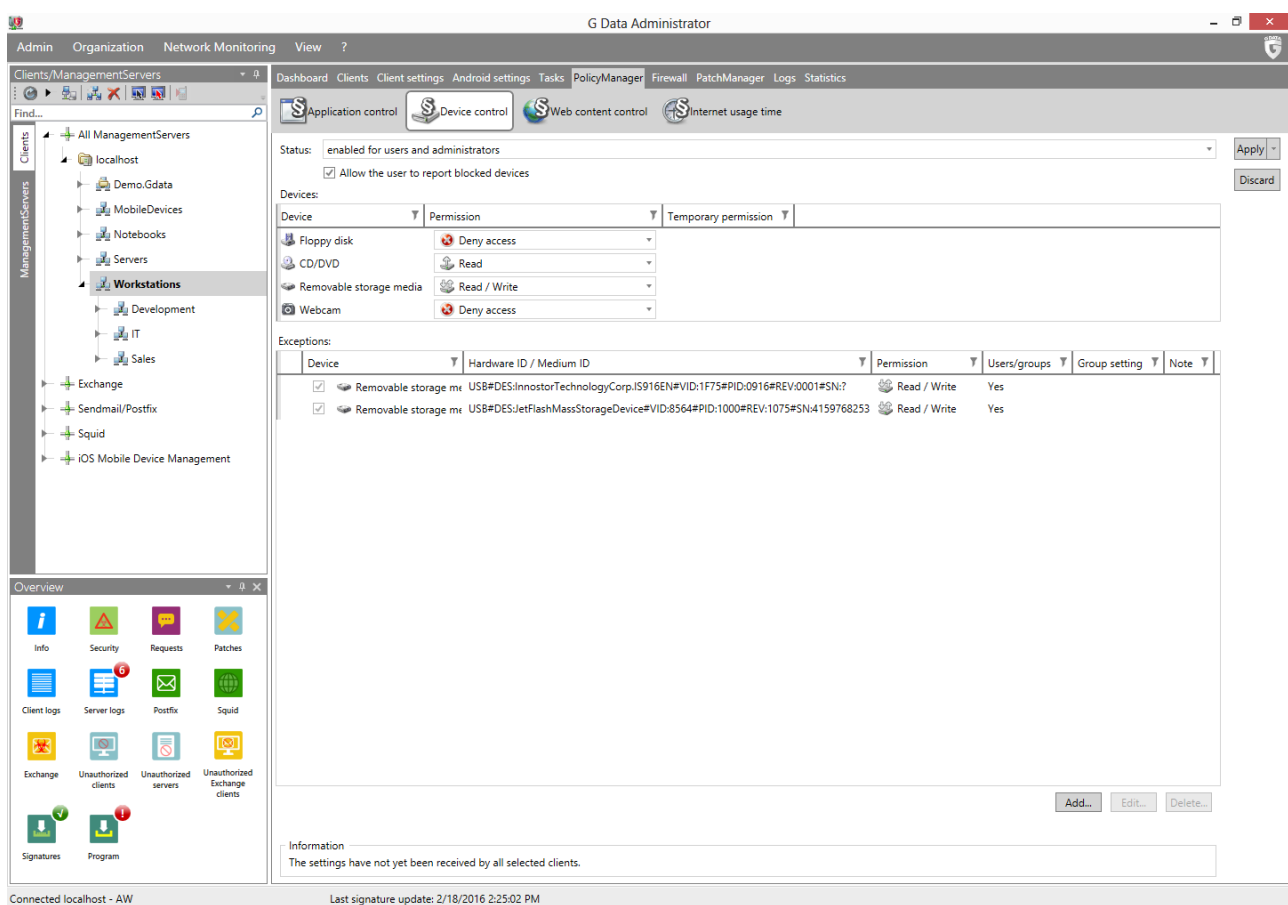


Image 52: G DATA Administrator, PolicyManager, Device control

Clicking the NEW button brings up the whitelist entry popup. The window lists only those device categories that have been restricted in the device category list; device categories that have been assigned READ/WRITE permissions are not being blocked and hence do not need whitelist entries. The field HARDWARE ID/MEDIUM ID is used to define the device or medium that should be added to the whitelist. Using the ... button, the correct ID to be whitelisted can be determined. The popup window allows a search across local devices or devices on any of the network clients. By selecting a hardware ID, a complete device can be whitelisted. For example, a system where all DVD drives are blocked can have one DVD drive defined as an exception. A medium ID, on the other hand, helps whitelist a specific medium. For

example, on a system with blocked DVD drives, permission can be added to use a specific CD or DVD. This is also useful for clients that are not allowed to use any removable media, but need access to one specific (company-managed) USB stick. Exceptions can be limited to specific Windows users or user groups. This is particularly useful in scenarios where some users or departments require access to a certain device class or a specific medium which was previously blocked across the network (for example, when users from the PR department need access to USB sticks to prepare press kits).

Similar to Application control, the Device control module can do its work with or without user interaction. Select **ALLOW THE USER TO REPORT BLOCKED DEVICES** to provide the user with the possibility to request access whenever a device is blocked. The popup window will offer an option to request permission to use the device or medium. This will generate a report in the **SECURITY EVENTS** module. Based on the report, a whitelist exception can be added. The device category itself can be enabled for selected clients, or only a specific device or medium based on device ID or medium ID. The possibilities for whitelisting depend on the data that are available in the report. Be careful when adding device exceptions. The decision should not be based on user requests alone; if possible, obtain the medium that the exception was requested for and verify that it is indeed necessary. When adding an exception, work with medium exceptions instead of hardware exceptions wherever possible. This will limit the risk of unauthorized device use and malware infections. Exceptions can also be added for a specific period of time only. If a device has been temporarily permitted, the time frame is displayed in the **POLICYMANAGER** module and the exception can be cancelled at any time.

14.3. Web content

A popular part of enterprise policies is limiting access to specific websites. There can be many reasons for blocking sites. Productivity is one: end users can be prevented from visiting sites that have nothing to do with the tasks they are working on, such as online games or social networks. Additionally, sites can contain illegal or inappropriate content. File sharing sites, adult content, or sites propagating hacking are in almost all cases irrelevant to work and should be blocked. This type of sites is often found in the shadier parts of the internet, where malicious web hosts or hacked ad networks could try to infect visitors with malware.

Before blocking any of the categories included in PolicyManager's **WEB CONTENT CONTROL**, an inventory of essential sites should be made. To ensure that important sites are not accidentally blocked, they should be added to the **GLOBAL EXCEPTIONS** before deploying any policy. Conversely, if there are any sites that specifically need to be blocked, they too should be added.

To save time and effort, administrators can block predefined website categories. Several categories are available, grouped by type of content. Each category consists of a list of blacklisted URLs that can be blocked. For each network zone, administrators should decide which websites categories should be blocked. It is recommended to block illegal content at the very least (depending on local legislation, this includes categories like Criminal know-how, Drugs, File sharing, Gambling, and Hacking). Depending on network policies and administrator wishes, other categories can be enabled (for productivity, categories such as Blogs, Chat and Social networks; inappropriate content can be blocked using categories like Adult content, Hate, or Nudity).

With the correct client or group selected in the CLIENTS view, the categories to be blocked can be selected. If the checkbox in front of the category name is selected, access to websites in that category is allowed. To block access, deselect the category. Any combination of categories is possible. Since categories are provided for a very wide-ranging set of scenarios, blocking access across all of them at the same time is not recommended, since this will severely impede website access. Administrators should make a specific selection based on the types of sites that employees should and should not be able to visit. In addition to the category list, sites can be blocked or allowed by using the GLOBAL EXCEPTIONS. The exceptions are in effect for the whole network to allow administrators to quickly configure all clients. For example, websites that are essential for workflow processes can be added to the whitelist, or the company's own website.

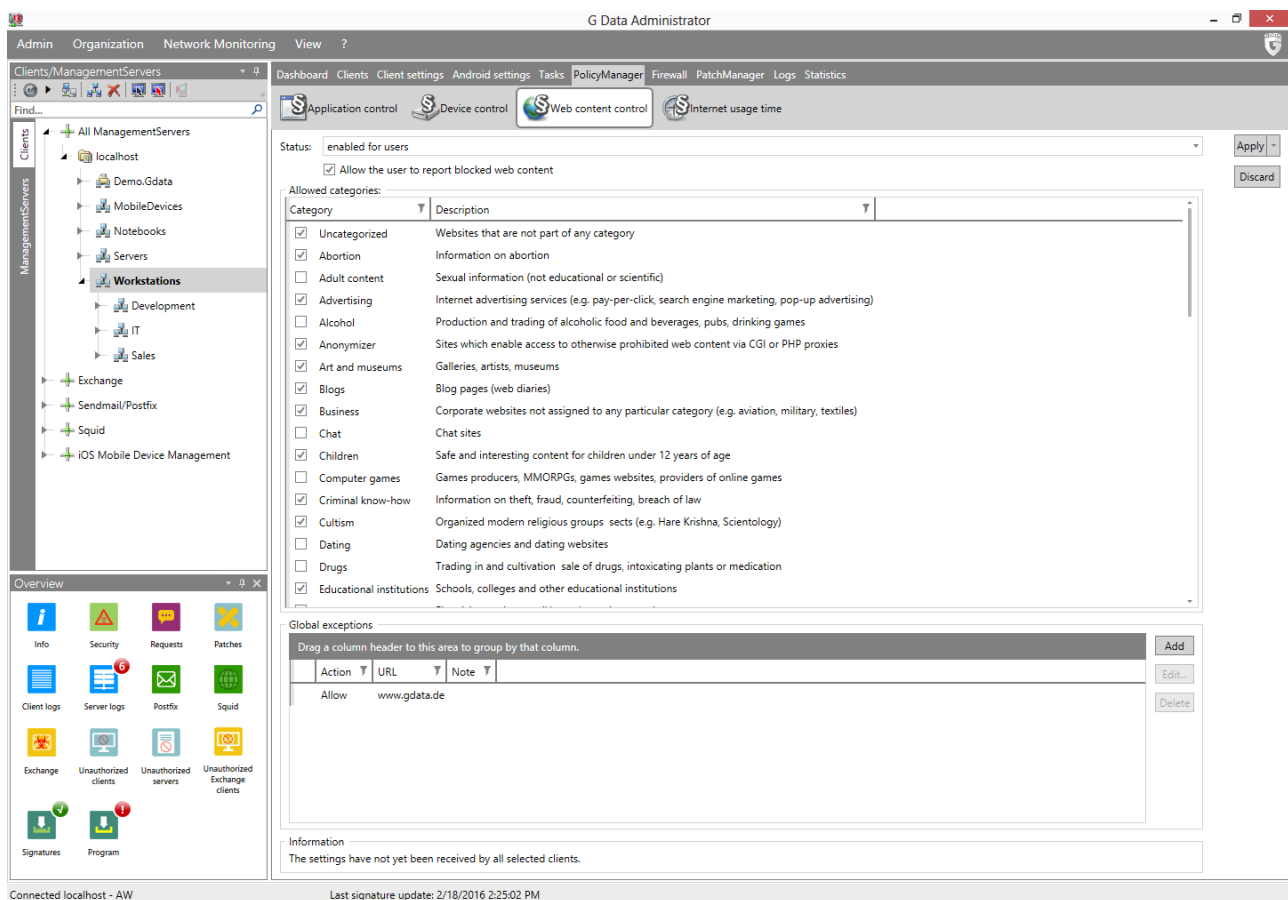


Image 53: G DATA Administrator, PolicyManager, Web content control

Web content control relies on the HTTP traffic scan layer (see chapter 8.1). This means that the option to process internet traffic should be enabled for every client on which web content control is to be deployed. PROCESS INTERNET TRAFFIC (HTTP) can be enabled on the WEB tab of the CLIENT SETTINGS module. If the client uses a proxy server, it can be enabled on the same tab. When the end user requests a URL in the browser, G DATA Security Client checks the URL against G DATA's central URL list to requests its category. If the category is blocked, or the site is on the global blacklist, the request is denied and the page is not loaded. If there are latency issues, and the category lookup delivers no result within 1000 milliseconds, the site will be loaded. If ALLOW THE USER TO REPORT BLOCKED WEB CONTENT has been selected, a popup window will be shown whenever a website is blocked. The user can request access to the website, which will

generate a report in the SECURITY EVENTS module. The administrator can then either allow access to the complete category (for any of the clients or groups), or add the website to the global whitelist.

14.4. Internet usage time

The fourth and final PolicyManager module focuses not on filtering internet content, but completely blocking it. As with all policies, there is both a policy and a security component to it. Policy-wise, administrators can choose to restrict internet access to specific times of the day, to restrict it to a maximum cumulative amount of time, or to completely block it. Employees that do not need internet access can be forced to focus on their tasks, or be allowed to use the internet only during a lunch break. Moreover, internet access restriction provides security by reducing the amount of time that the attack vector is available. However, it needs to be carefully considered in which scenarios it can be used. Blocking internet access severely restricts workflows that depend on obtaining or publishing information online.

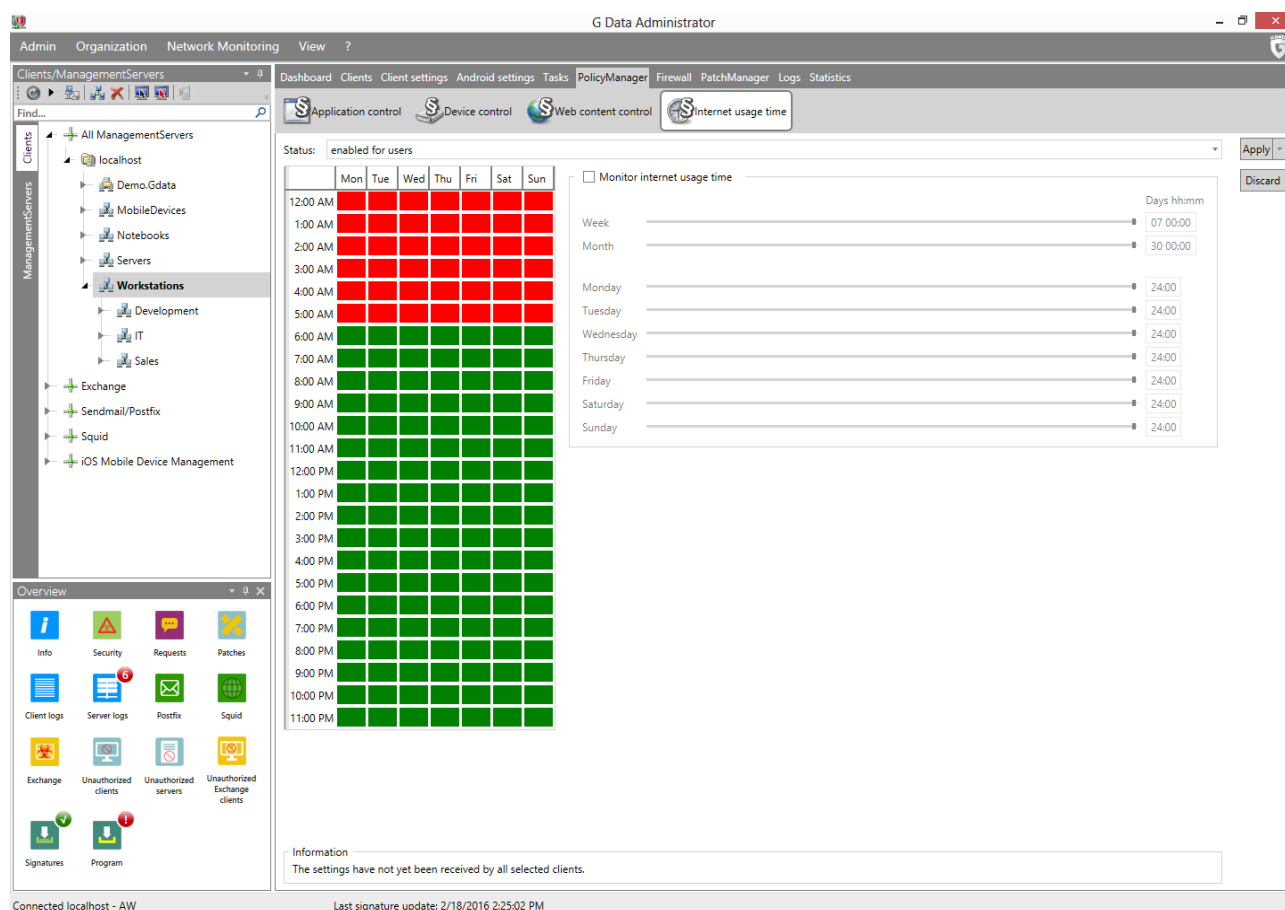


Image 54: G DATA Administrator, PolicyManager, Internet usage time

The INTERNET USAGE TIME panel of PolicyManager shows two important components. On the left, the grid shows at which times on which days of the week internet access should be granted or restricted. Using the time grid, several configurations can be enacted. Click and drag, or use the Ctrl + Click or Shift + Click combinations, to select several time slots at once. Right click to choose between blocking and allowing internet usage for those time slots. For example, to make sure that internet access is only possible during lunch break, select all time slots (Ctrl + A), right click and select BLOCK TIME. Then select lunch break hours,

right click and select `ALLOW TIME`. If an end user tries to access a website when internet access is blocked, a warning page will be displayed in the browser. Note that internet access restrictions could be circumvented by changing the local time setting. If the setting has not been enabled already, it is recommended to prevent end users from changing local time settings using a group policy object.

On the right, a set of sliders can be used to define daily, weekly or monthly usage limits. These limits are enforced separately and in addition to the time grid. The sliders can be enabled by ticking `MONITOR INTERNET USAGE TIME` and indicate the maximum amount of time internet can be used. By default, internet access is available all the time: 30 days per month, 7 days per week and 24 hours a day. By dragging the sliders, this amount can be reduced. Alternatively, time can be entered manually. For example, entering **04 20:05** in the Week field corresponds to 4 days, 20 hours and 5 minutes of internet usage allowance. Once the internet allowance for a certain period of time has been exceeded, users will see a warning page if they try to open a website. If there are any conflicting time entries, the smallest amount of time will be used. For example, if a time limit of four days per month is defined, but a weekly limit of five days, the software will automatically limit Internet usage to four days.

Like `WEB CONTENT CONTROL` (see chapter 14.3), `INTERNET USAGE TIME` relies on the HTTP traffic scan layer. This means that the option to process internet traffic should be enabled for every client on which internet usage time should be tracked. Traffic on other ports than the ones defined for the HTTP traffic scan layer is not monitored.

15. PatchManager

PatchManager is available as an optional module.

Patches often repair security vulnerabilities through which attackers may gain access to systems running the affected software. In responding to security emergencies, rapid deployment of patches is important. A complicating factor, the release of a patch actually stimulates hackers to develop an exploit for the security bug, due to the public release of information about the vulnerability that typically accompanies patch releases. By reverse-engineering patch files, attackers can obtain the information necessary to stage an effective attack. This puts extra pressure on administrators to timely patch their systems. Patch management helps speed up patch deployment and improves the efficiency of the complete process by coordinating and standardizing patch deployment procedures, preventing successful exploitation of software bugs by hackers.



Image 55: Patch management cycle

The patch management cycle can be broken down into different stages (see chapters 15.1 through 15.7)¹⁷. Depending on wishes and requirements, companies can merge stages by bundling them and assigning them to the same person, or define further action points as required. Existing change and release management standards can be (partially) integrated. Some steps of the procedure can be automated, most notably the deployment, but several key actions will have to be carried out manually for each cycle. To optimize this process, planning is crucial. It can be very helpful to define a patch management policy that deals with common questions. Should all available patches be installed by default, or will there be a classification, possibly based on the severity of the vulnerabilities they remedy? Will patches be installed proactively (to plug possible security holes) or reactively (only when problems arise), or a combination of both? To prevent spending unnecessary time on patch-by-patch decisions, it is recommended to set as many generalized rules as possible. At the same time, simply installing every available patch is not a solution: to prevent network and system load and compatibility problems, conscious choices need to be made.

¹⁷ For a more theoretical overview of the different steps, see G DATA TechPaper #0271 – Patch Management Best Practices.

Because patch management is a time-consuming task, complete automation can be a tempting proposition. PatchManager can function near-autonomously: automated rollouts of critical patches can be configured through PatchManager's SETTINGS tab. Even though this method makes sure that clients are timely supplied with the latest critical patches, configuring PatchManager this way is not advised. A patch might well be applicable to a specific client, but that does not mean it can be installed without problems. Compatibility problems may arise after its installation, inhibiting system or software availability. A proper testing procedure should always be part of patch management; cutting corners on any part of the cycle is not recommended.

The PATCHMANAGER module supports the use of SQL Server Express, but for medium to large networks, the use of a dedicated SQL Server is recommended.

15.1. Step 1: Inventory update

Firstly, it is important to take and keep an inventory of machines in the network and their software and hardware. The CLIENTS module lets administrators access a full list of installed software for each network client. The inventory can be organized to provide different types of information. The default view shows a flat list of all software that is installed on the selected clients. The listing includes the installation date, the software vendor and the currently installed version. By grouping the items according to vendor and name, for each product a quick overview is available to check if the latest version has been installed on all machines.

The screenshot displays the G DATA Administrator interface. The top menu bar includes Admin, Organization, Network Monitoring, View, and a help icon. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for Overview, Software, Hardware, and Messages. The left sidebar shows a tree view of ManagementServers, with Workstations expanded. The main area displays a table of installed software for client AW2008R2BASE.

Client	Installed	Name	Installation date	Version	Vendor	User
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft SQL Server 2008			Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 (Deutsch)		4.5.51209	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2		4.5.51209	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 (Français)		4.5.51209	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 (Italiano)		4.5.51209	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 (Nederlands)		4.5.51209	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 (español)		4.5.51209	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable - x86 9.0.30729.4148	11/11/2013	9.0.30729.4148	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable - x64 9.0.30729.6161	11/11/2013	9.0.30729.6161	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Google Chrome	11/12/2013	41.0.2272.118	Google Inc.	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Snagit 11	11/12/2013	11.2.1	TechSmith Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft Filter Pack 2.0	11/12/2013	14.0.4763.1000	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	VMware Tools	11/19/2013	9.2.4.27715	VMware, Inc.	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	HeidiSQL	5/13/2014		Ansgar Becker	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Adobe Reader XI (11.0.10)	12/10/2014	11.0.10	Adobe Systems Incorporated	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Browser	1/28/2015	10.3.5500.0	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft SQL Server VSS Writer	1/28/2015	10.3.5500.0	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Native Client	1/28/2015	10.3.5500.0	Microsoft Corporation	
AW2008R2BASE	Yes	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Setup Support Files	1/28/2015	10.3.5500.0	Microsoft Corporation	

The bottom status bar shows: Connected localhost - AW, Last signature update: 2/18/2016 2:25:02 PM, Entries: 0. The bottom right corner indicates Number per page: 1000, Page: 1 of 1.

Image 56: G DATA Administrator, Clients, Software

At this point, it is recommended to check if network clients are running any software that is not part of the standard deployment. Administrators cannot be aware of potential security risks for all software in existence. Using the Software inventory helps spot unsanctioned software installations. Administrators can decide to either add the software to their official deployment list (Whitelist), or to remove them (Blacklist). Users of G DATA Endpoint Protection Business can use the PolicyManager module (see chapter 14) to apply network-wide policies, whitelisting or blacklisting software to control deployment.

Not only is it important to keep track of software; successful deployment also depends on physical prerequisites like hardware specifications. Using the Hardware inventory function, a wide range of specifications can be tracked. Physical specs, like CPU speed and the amount of internal memory, help predict patch deployment speed and performance. The amount of free disk space is important in order to prevent patch deployment from generating errors. Additionally, bios and motherboard firmware versions can be tracked, to compare against newly published firmware.

15.2. Step 2: Information gathering

As soon as an inventory has been established, administrators should keep up with information about the latest patches. The PatchManager module provides a list of all available patches for a wide range of products on the PATCH CONFIGURATION tab. The database is updated automatically as soon as vendors publish a new patch. An overview of vendors, products and patches can be gathered from a set of charts at the top of the tab.

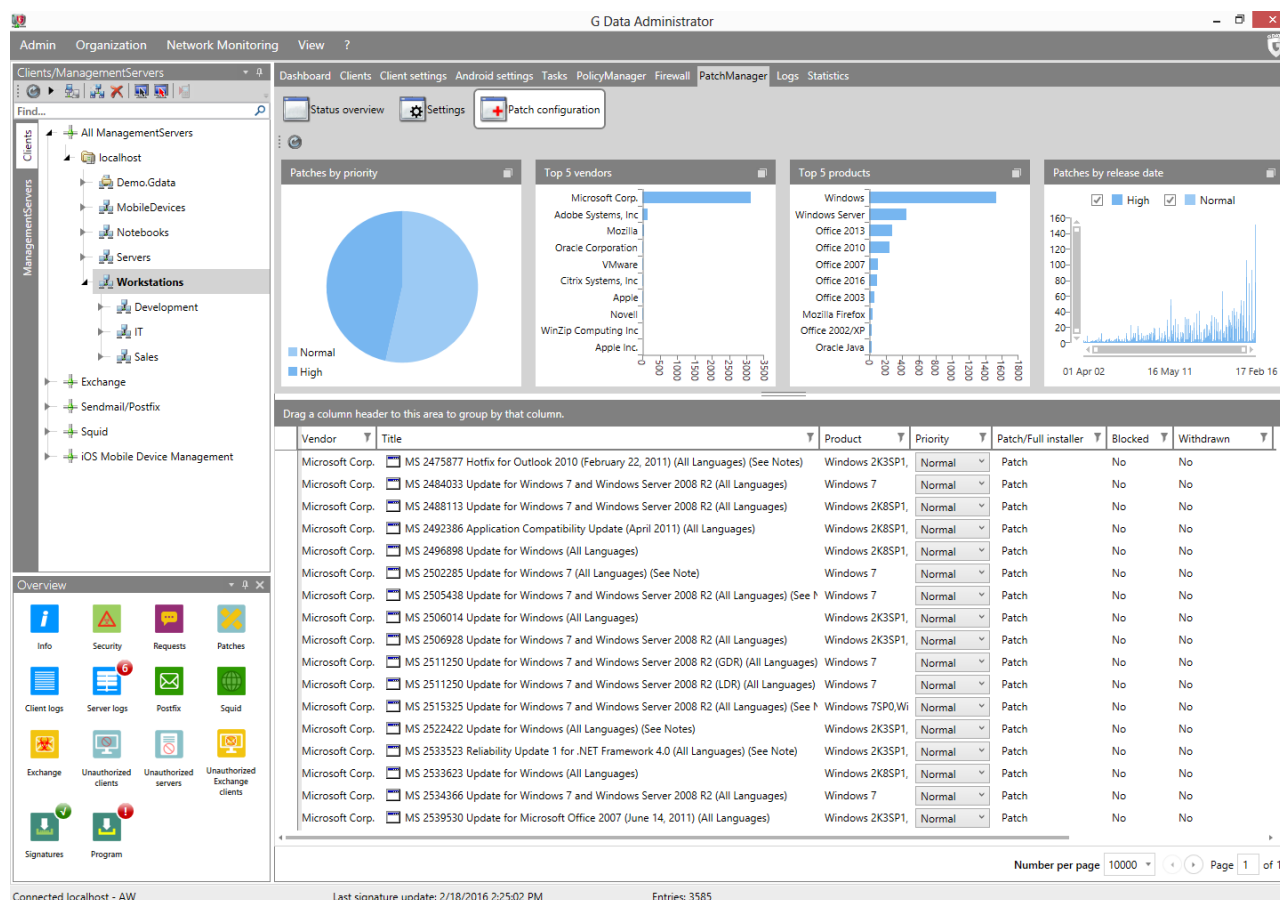


Image 57: G DATA Administrator, PatchManager, Patch configuration

By default, the list of patches is grouped by **VENDOR**, **PRIORITY**, and **PRODUCT**. This allows administrators to quickly look up patches for a specific product. The default display filter settings exclude full software installers from the list, as well as any blocked entries. Click **RESET ALL FILTERS** to reset the display filter. If a patch has superseded another patch, its entry can be expanded to display a list of patches it supersedes. More information about individual patches, often including full release notes, can be obtained by right-clicking on a patch and checking its properties.

15.3. Step 3: Strategy and planning

Whenever a new patch is released, it should be checked against all client systems to see if it applies to a product that is in use in the network. For critical patches, this process can be automated on the **SETTINGS** tab. To manually check one or more patches for applicability, select it on the **STATUS OVERVIEW** tab and click **CHECK PATCHES FOR APPLICABILITY**. This schedules a **PATCH APPLICABILITY JOB** for the specified client(s). Alternatively, an automatic scan can be carried out for each new patch that is added to the database, including critical as well as less critical ones. Using the **TASKS** module, plan a **PATCH APPLICABILITY JOB** that is executed as soon as a new patch is available. PatchManager then checks the new patches for applicability across all specified clients. Even though patch applicability jobs can automatically install patches if they are found to be applicable, it is recommended to plan patch tests beforehand (see chapter 15.4).

After scanning for applicability, select the appropriate server or client(s) in the **CLIENTS** view and open the **STATUS OVERVIEW** tab of PatchManager. By default, the list is grouped by **STATUS**, **PRIORITY**, **VENDOR** and **PRODUCT**. This helps to quickly locate patches that are applicable, not applicable or have already been installed. Patches that are applicable for the client system(s) are the ones that need to be reviewed, tested and finally deployed.

To help decide whether to deploy a certain patch or not, PatchManager provides a set of information for each patch. In its list overview, the PatchManager module shows the products that a patch applies to, as well as its release date, its official title, and its priority. For each patch, a full description and usually a URL to the official release notes are provided. These pieces of information help administrators decide how severe a certain vulnerability is, and how quickly its patch needs to be deployed. The most significant patches should be installed with a higher priority than non-critical patches. The important point to remember is that not all patches should be installed by default. The point of patch management automation is not to take decision making out of the equation, but to provide enough details to make informed decisions, and to streamline the deployment process. PatchManager provides as much information as it can, but the decision to test and finally deploy a patch, is always up to the administrator.

15.4. Step 4: Testing

Once it has been decided that a specific patch will be deployed, the testing procedure can start. It is recommended to use a set of representative machines to test patches. These machines should be similar to the clients that are actually in use, in order to test for possible problems without disrupting the actual clients. However, not every administrator will have access to enough machines to build a small-sized replica of their network. Virtualization is the recommended method; if there is really no other solution, a non-vital subset of the network can be used. In this case, using G DATA Administrator, a test environment

can be organized in one or more groups. Patches can be deployed to one or more clients in one or more groups, to observe the installation and its effects.

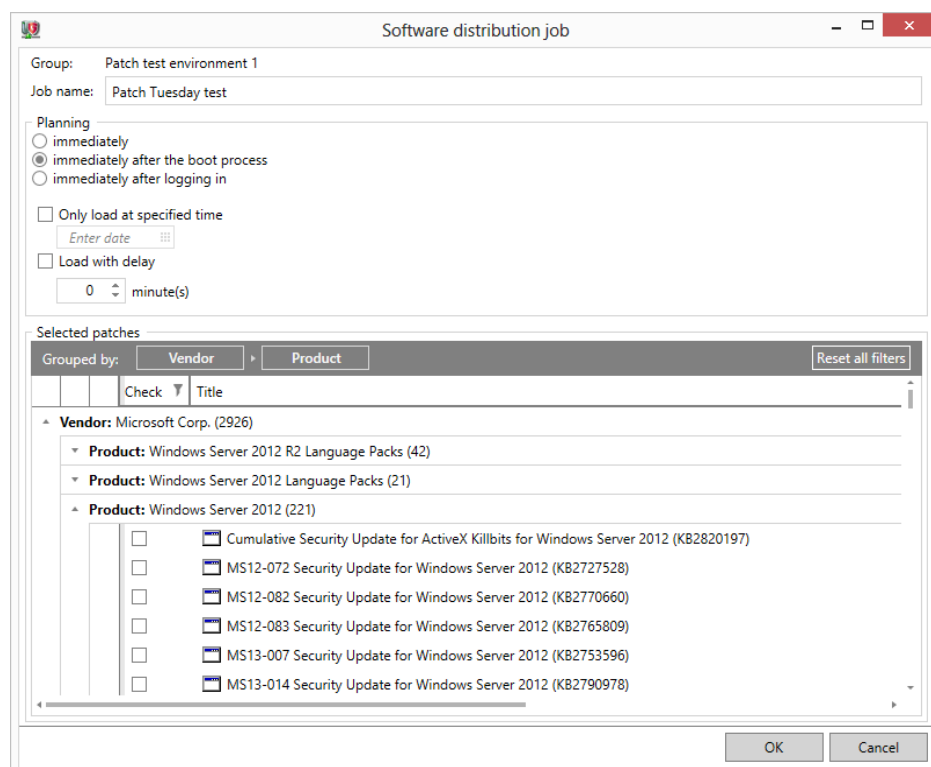


Image 58: G DATA Administrator, Tasks, Software distribution job

To deploy one or more patches to a test group, select the group in the CLIENTS view. Open the TASKS module and create a new SOFTWARE DISTRIBUTION JOB. Select the patch(es) to be distributed and specify at which time this should occur. Selecting the patch can be made easier by grouping the patch list by VENDOR or PRODUCT. Repeat this process with all appropriate patches and for all appropriate test groups. It is recommended to test only one patch per system at the same time, to be able to pinpoint possible problems on a specific patch.

During the testing period, as well as the verification phase after deployment, the REPORTMANAGER module can assist in finding out what the status is of patches being deployed, and which machines are potentially generating errors (see chapter 6.3). ReportManager lets the administrator select several modules to be combined into one report. Its PATCHMANAGER category provides several useful options, such as the patches most frequently not installed or computers with unexecuted software distribution jobs (which may point to installation problems), or computers with the most frequent patch requests or refusals (for analysis afterwards).

In addition to the ReportManager module, patch testing status can also be located in the TASKS module itself. Open the relevant task and check the details to see the status for each patch. If it appears that a patch has not been deployed successfully, update the Software inventory for that client to double-check. If the patch cannot be deployed, check the system locally and try a manual patch deployment. If a patch is causing problems during the testing phase, it should not be deployed on a large scale until the problems have been resolved.

Patch testing could theoretically be skipped: PatchManager can automatically install critical patches if the respective option is enabled on the **SETTINGS** tab. This is not recommended: patches should always be tested for compatibility and only be rolled out if it has been ensured that they will not cause problems.

15.5. Step 5: Schedule and assessment

After finishing the testing stage, the actual deployment can be planned. With all applicable patches located and tested, a schedule can be set up. Using your patch management policy, decide in which order the patches should be deployed and to which (groups of) machines at first. Use the **MESSAGES** function of the **CLIENTS** module to notify clients of the patch schedule and to warn them about eventual reboots.

15.6. Step 6: Patch deployment

For patches that have been properly tested, a **SOFTWARE DISTRIBUTION JOB** can be planned. Use the **TASKS** module to schedule a **SOFTWARE DISTRIBUTION JOB** with the appropriate patches for the appropriate clients. To prevent interference with end user workflows, patches can be scheduled to be deployed at a specific time, or directly after the next boot or login. An optional delay prevents patches from being deployed while other system-intensive processes may be running.

15.7. Step 7: Verification and reporting

To verify and evaluate patch deployment, the inventory tools can be of great assistance. Additionally, the PatchManager module offers the possibility for direct user feedback. Patches that are applicable to the system, but have not been deployed yet or will not be deployed at all, can be requested by end users in case there is an urgent need to patch a product. If the administrator enables the respective option, end users can request patches to be rolled back, due to performance or compatibility issues. Administrators can manually initiate rollbacks at any time, allowing for quick solutions if a specific patch is causing issues. The distribution and rollback request system integrates directly with the PatchManager module and allows the administrator to plan a distribution or rollback job directly from the **SECURITY EVENTS** module.

16. Network monitoring

G DATA offers network monitoring as an optional module that integrates with its security solutions. It helps IT staff ensure business continuity by tracking the status of a wide range of network devices, including hardware as well as software. Examples include endpoints and servers (hard drives, CPU, RAM), network infrastructure (network interfaces, routers, switches, access points, firewalls), peripherals, processes and services.

Assisted by the regular monitoring reports and configurable alarms, staff can provide maintenance and support for all devices, as well as proactively reduce the number of incidents and plan infrastructure deployments and extensions. Network monitoring makes device management, performance optimization and maintenance more efficient and cost-effective for any business from SMB to global enterprise.

16.1. Using network monitoring

The increasing number of network devices makes it hard for administrators to identify availability risks or performance bottlenecks. Network monitoring helps counter this trend. Not only does continuous monitoring enable administrators to spot performance issues as they occur, it also allows them to track trends. Using historical trend data, weak points in the network can be optimized before the load affects performance or causes an outage. When users report problems with a database, CRM system or web shop that is not available, (historical) data and error logs are very useful.

Network monitoring can also support infrastructure developments such as network migration and expansion. For example, through charting network topology, administrators can identify infrastructure components in need of improvement as well as making sure the network meets any deployment-specific prerequisites. By tracking performance over a longer time, administrators can also gain insight on performance levels. Measuring points can include application and infrastructure response time, utilization, throughput and capacity. These can then serve as baseline indicators when planning new infrastructure for migration and expansion scenarios, in order to make informed decisions about scalability and availability. This helps find the balance in capacity planning, making sure peak loads are processed appropriately while preventing infrastructure from going unused most of the time.

Because network monitoring can be configured to log a wide range of data, it is very well suited for auditing and compliance purposes. Not only does it track usage data for devices in the network infrastructure, it can also monitor default configurations and log configuration changes. This allows businesses to prepare their infrastructure for certification and make sure they do not drift out of compliance as infrastructure is expanded over time.

The features of network monitoring neatly tie in to security solutions. As one of the layers in the corporate network security concept, network monitoring can help detect signs of suspicious activities, such as an unusually high network load, which can indicate Denial of Service (DoS) attacks. Infected network devices may also exhibit atypical CPU load, service behavior or memory usage as well as runaway processes or traffic caused by malware infections. Combined with the PatchManager module (see chapter 15), network monitoring helps administrators quickly and easily detect and mitigate vulnerabilities.

For cloud infrastructure management, virtual servers and other multi-tenant scenarios, network monitoring is essential to maintain a business model. Infrastructure needs to be built and serviced in order to host a considerable customer base; network monitoring helps estimate requirements and maintain performance for all applications and services on the network. The same methods help prepare the virtualization of physical servers by measuring their read/write access, network traffic, CPU usage and other performance-related statistics.

16.2. Preparation and deployment

The Network monitoring module adheres to the same client-server structure that the other protection layers use and can be easily added to new and existing G DATA deployments. The architecture is cloud-based with support from the local G DATA ManagementServer. G DATA Security Client functions as agent, which collects data from local data points as well as other network devices. Those values are reported to G DATA ManagementServer, which in turn synchronizes them with the cloud service G DATA ActionCenter. The cloud service aggregates and stores data, sends out notifications and offers access to an extensive web-based interface via <https://ac.gdata.de>.

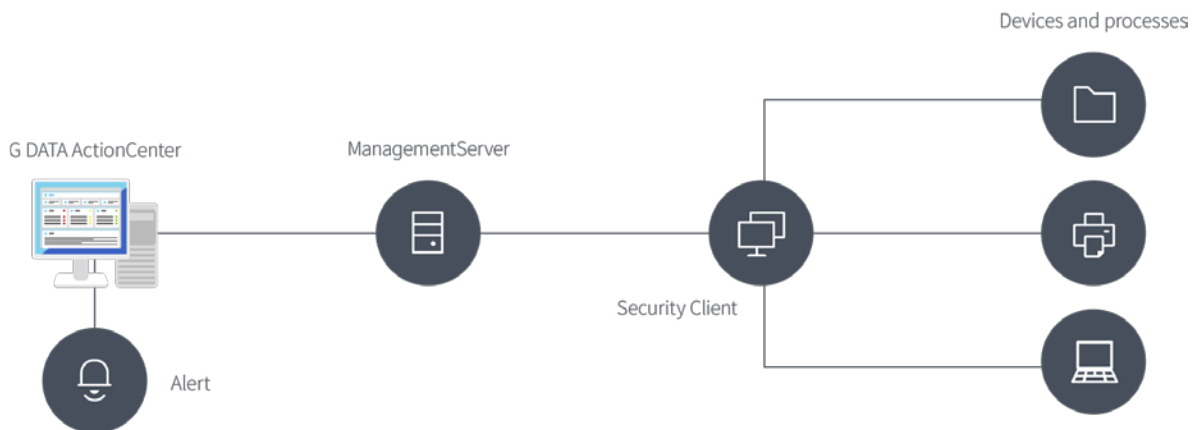


Image 59: G DATA Network Monitoring architecture

In order to deploy network monitoring, an account for G DATA ActionCenter is required. It can be created for free through the web interface. In order to establish the link between ActionCenter and G DATA ManagementServer, the ActionCenter login data should be entered in the ACTIONCENTER module of G DATA Administrator. G DATA ManagementServer will then synchronize data with ActionCenter. All ManagementServers that have been linked with the ActionCenter account are listed on the SERVERS page. In addition to displaying server information, the page lets administrators set permissions for other users to access the network monitoring configuration through ActionCenter. This can be useful when multiple administrators need access to information, particularly if they are part of the alert workflow (see chapter 16.4).

Further configuration of network monitoring takes place through the web interface using metrics and metric templates. A template contains a predefined type of monitoring and its configuration parameters. Examples include:

- Monitor a specific process on a Windows device
- Monitor the availability of a server
- Monitor the toner level of a printer

After defining a template, a metric is created by assigning the template to one or more devices. The device will periodically carry out the specific monitoring action and report the result to the associated ManagementServer. The server will synchronize the results to ActionCenter, which in turn carries out the actions that have been defined in the template (such as sending an alert).

Depending on the type of metric, additional configuration may be required. Metrics that make use of SNMP need to be able to communicate with the device that is being monitored. Some devices, such as network printers, have built-in SNMP support. In order to enable SNMP-based communication with Windows and Linux machines, an SNMP agent must be installed. On Linux, this can be achieved by installing the net-snmp package from the repository. Windows users can download the installer from the Sourceforge page for Net-SNMP¹⁸.

Some software packages require a plugin to communicate with the SNMP agent. When configuring a metric that monitors an Apache web server, Apachestatistics needs to be installed first. Apachestatistics contains the mod_statistics Apache module as well as a netsnmp plugin and can be downloaded from Sourceforge¹⁹. Instructions on how to install Apachestatistics are included in the downloaded file.

16.3. Configuration

In order to set up network monitoring, one or more metric templates must be created. The template is assigned to a device, thereby creating a metric. The metric will regularly report its values to G DATA ActionCenter (via G DATA Security Client and G DATA ManagementServer), which are then displayed in the DASHBOARD and/or METRIC views of the web interface.

After logging in to G DATA ActionCenter and choosing the NETWORK MONITORING module, open the METRICS OVERVIEW and click on MANAGE TEMPLATES and CREATE TEMPLATE. The parameters of metric templates depends on the use case for network monitoring (see chapter 16.1 for typical examples). For every template, at least the following GENERAL SETTINGS must be entered:

- **CATEGORY:** Select the metric category. Each category governs multiple metrics. For example, selecting SNMP DEVICES populates the METRIC list with metrics relating to SNMP statistics such as received/sent network data and TCP connections.
- **METRIC:** Select one of the available metrics for the selected category.
- **TARGET/HOSTNAME:** All metrics are run on the device to which they are assigned. However, not all metrics collect their data on that same device. Some metrics, most notably network-based ones, additionally require a target to be defined. The metric is still executed on the device to which they are assigned, but they probe the host that is defined under TARGET/HOSTNAME. For example, when selecting the PING REQUEST metric, the metric is run on Localhost but probes the HOSTNAME host.
- **NAME:** The metric template name can be used to tell apart templates in the MANAGE METRIC TEMPLATES list.

After entering the general settings, the template can be saved and used to create a metric. For many network monitoring scenarios, however, the OPTIONAL SETTINGS and ALERTS SETTINGS should also be configured. Using the THRESHOLD VALUE and MEASURED VALUE CONDITION settings, the conditions according to

¹⁸ See <http://net-snmp.sourceforge.net>.

¹⁹ See <https://sourceforge.net/projects/apachestatistics/>.

which the metric values will be evaluated can be set. For example, when measuring server availability, a threshold value of 1000 ms could be entered. When the measured value to reach that specific device exceeds 1000 ms, the metric state is changed from OK to WARNING or (when it repeatedly fails) to CRITICAL. Under ALERTS SETTINGS, an alert can be configured to be sent to one or more email addresses. The administrator will then receive an email message when it takes more than 1000 ms to reach the server.

Having created a metric template, it can be assigned to one or more devices, thus creating a metric. From the METRICS OVERVIEW page, click CREATE METRICS to assign one or more metric templates to one or more devices. Metric creation is a four-step process:

1. Select one or more previously created metric templates.
2. Select one or more devices. The chosen metric templates will be applied to all devices. Some templates can only be applied to ManagementServers, others only to clients. ActionCenter will automatically map the templates to the appropriate devices.
3. Make sure that the all devices to which metric templates should be applied are listed.
4. Make sure that the number of new metrics corresponds to the expectations and that it does not exceed the maximum number of allowed metrics (depending on the license).

After clicking CREATE METRICS, the corresponding metrics are created. The template model allows administrators to update multiple metrics at once. When modifying a template, the changes are applied to all metrics that are based on that template. For example, when monitoring RAM usage on a number of devices, it may turn out that the amount of RAM needs to be increased because the values drop below the threshold too often. After increasing the amount of RAM on the affected devices, the metric template can be edited to apply a new threshold value to all devices at once.

16.4. Infrastructure analysis

With one or more metrics created, administrators can use various ways to keep track of the reported data, each of which fits one or more of the typical use cases. For scenarios that rely on immediate reports, alarms are the recommended notification method. They allow for quick response times when an emergency happens. Alarms can be enabled in metric templates and are applied to all metrics that are based on the template. When enabling an alarm, it should be made sure that appropriate email groups have also been defined to make sure that crises can be swiftly dealt with. Alarm notifications can be sent to a mail distribution list, such as an emergency response team as part of an IT department. It should be made sure that all alarm recipients can take action if they receive an alarm. If they should be able to carry out actions independently from the administrator, they can receive permissions to use ActionCenter themselves (see chapter 16.2). At the very least, a workflow needs to be defined that makes sure that action can be taken quickly in case an emergency occurs.

Administrators do not have to wait until alarms are sent. Network monitoring logs all metric values as they are reported by the monitored devices. The DASHBOARD view aggregates the information and displays numerical overviews per metric state (OK, WARNING and CRITICAL). In addition, metrics can be listed by state. This enables an at-a-glance overview. If one or more metrics do not have the OK state, administrators can quickly find them and further analyze the error. The LOGS section includes reports for metrics that report their first value, report any errors or change their state.

If a more detailed analysis is required, the individual metric pages can be used. Each page shows a diagram, allowing administrators to spot trends even before they reach a critical level. The diagram can be configured to display values for a specific amount of time and can be used to pinpoint trends. When the RAM usage of a device displays an upward trend before suddenly decreasing, for example, this may indicate a memory usage problem of specific processes. Administrators can use the information to take immediate action, such as defining metrics for system processes or investigating problems locally on the device itself. In addition to the diagram, the all-time minimum and maximum values are displayed, as well as a log of every time the metric changed its status (for example from OK to WARNING).

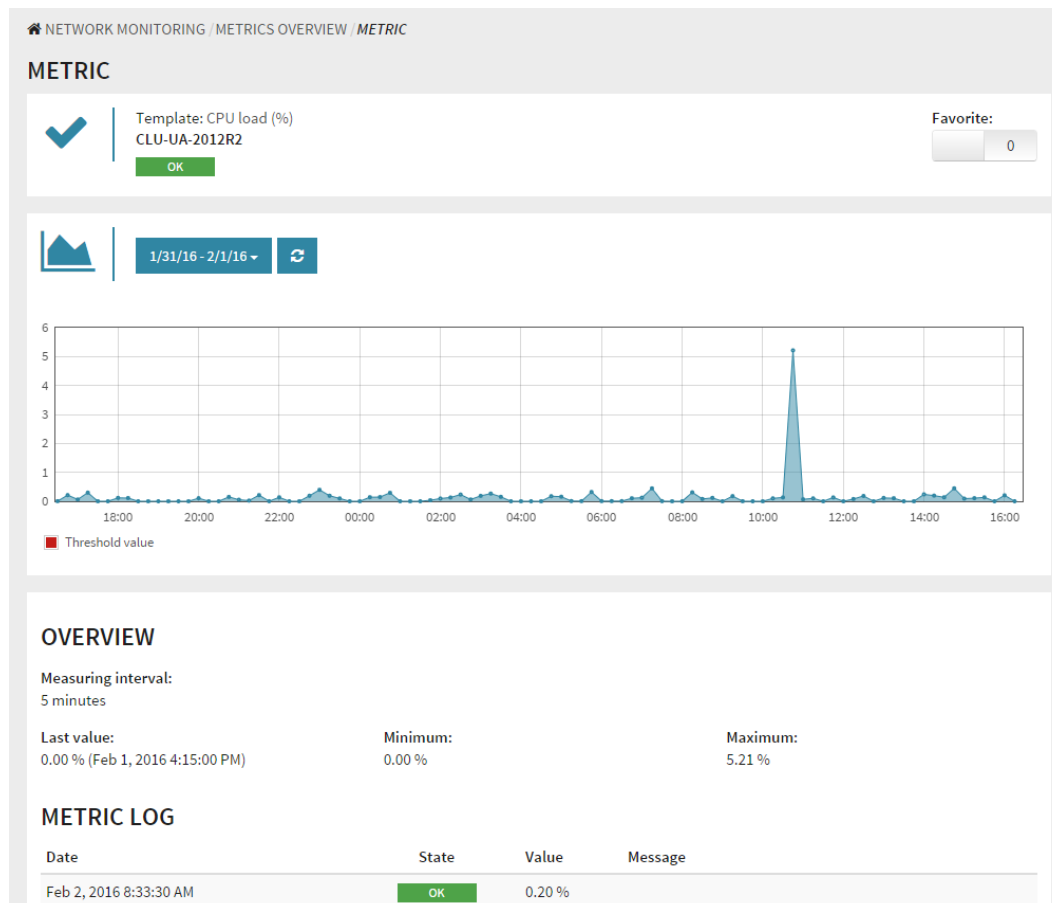


Image 60: G DATA ActionCenter, Metric view

Using the available data for individual services, administrators can also analyze trend data. Using historical monitoring data, for example, it is possible to identify peak and trough times for a network interface. These data points can be used to create a baseline of expected values and consequently to set alert thresholds. This is a process that should be optimized over time, as threshold values are not always easy to get right. Some services can still perform under load, leading to unnecessary alerts if thresholds are set too low. Others may stop functioning altogether when load increases, in which case warnings should be sent ahead of the indicator actually reaching the critical level. Which level is considered critical can be found out by tracking performance statistics over a longer time and correlating it with data about service availability and quality degradation. Administrators can also proactively set up performance tests that help find the breaking point for their infrastructure. The same tests can be run after a performance incident, making sure that any fixes that have been deployed are taking effect.

17. Mail server security

To keep malware from infecting end user hardware, such as desktop computers or smartphones, protecting only these endpoints will not do. Other network components should be secured to make sure that threats are filtered out at an early stage. An important building block of this layered security is mail server protection. By scanning all incoming and outgoing email, malware and spam can be prevented from ever reaching their destination.

Even for companies that are not hosting a local mail server, scanning all email is recommended. How to deploy mail server security depends on the current mail server setup. When using Microsoft Exchange Server, deploy Exchange Mail Security. Sendmail and Postfix servers can be protected by Linux Mail Security Gateway. Other mail servers can be covered by installing MailGateway as a gateway on the mail server itself or on a dedicated mail security gateway server. Chapter 4.2.4 offers detailed information about the different deployment types and the installation procedure.

17.1. Exchange Mail Security

Exchange Mail Security is available as an optional module.

Exchange Mail Security complements existing Exchange workflows. By deeply integrating with the server, the plugin provides transparent malware protection: without noticeable delays or user interaction, all incoming and outgoing objects are scanned and only passed on if they are free of malware. Plugin deployment looks like a regular client-server deployment. The Exchange plugin is deployed to the Exchange server and reports to an existing ManagementServer. Having entered the server's name during the installation, the Exchange plugin will connect to the ManagementServer and show up in G DATA Administrator's CLIENTS view. With an Exchange client selected, the CLIENTS, TASKS, SECURITY EVENTS and STATISTICS tabs offer functionality that is similar to their normal client management counterparts. Using the EXCHANGE SETTINGS module, malware scan and AntiSpam settings can be configured, as well as virus signature and program file updates. When enabled, the Exchange plugin will automatically update itself whenever it connects to the ManagementServer (in the interval defined under GENERAL SETTINGS > SYNCHRONIZATION). A manual update can be initiated at any time on the CLIENTS tab.

17.1.1. Antivirus

Several types of scans can be configured by Exchange Mail Security. The on-access scan guarantees permanent protection, while the on-demand scan can be configured to scan specific mailboxes at specific times.

17.1.1.1. On-access scan

Comparable to the file system monitor of G DATA Security Client, the on-access scan monitors all incoming and outgoing emails on the Exchange server. Emails are scanned automatically and only made available if they are free of malware. On the GENERAL tab you can enable the on-access scan and configure its scan parameters under SCAN SETTINGS. The scan can be carried out using one or two scan engines. Using two engines provides optimal security and is the recommended option. However, if scan performance is not as good as expected, one of the two engines can be disabled. This still offers very good detection

while increasing performance. Scan performance can be further influenced by selecting the type of files that should be scanned. The most secure option is to scan all files, but this does take more time than a limited scan. A limited scan only includes program files and documents, the file types most likely to be infected. Heuristics can be used to further increase detection by analyzing typical characteristics of malware. It slightly increases the chance of getting false positives, but greatly enhances malware detection. Enabling scans of archive files makes sure that even malware hiding inside of archives is found. This does increase scan time and if an infected file is found within the archive, the complete archive will be disinfected or removed. If you have configured quarantine measures, the complete email message (including the archive) will be quarantined. The **CHECK ARCHIVES** option can be disabled if all clients are using the file system monitor to ensure that malware is picked up as soon as it is extracted from the archive.

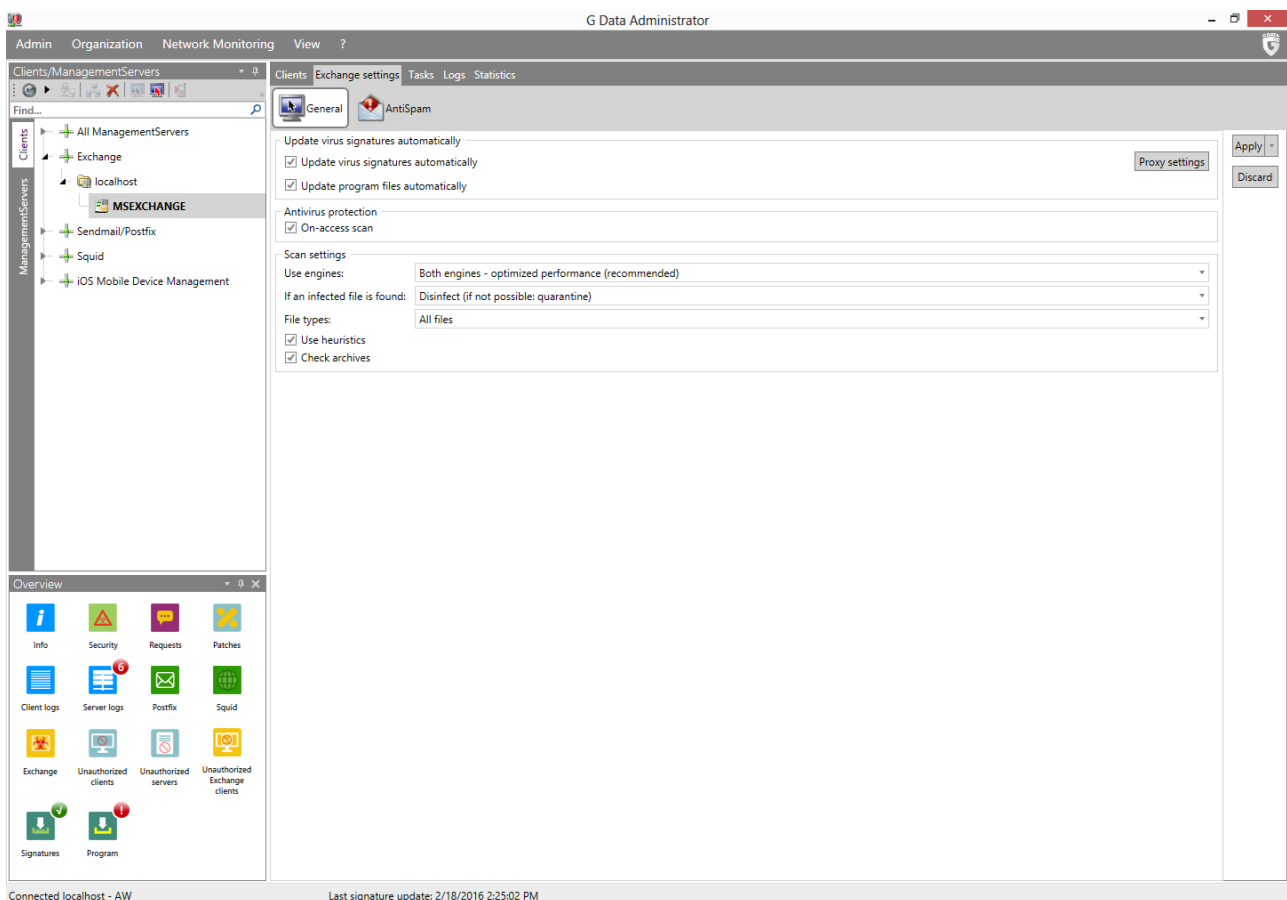


Image 61: G DATA Administrator, Exchange settings, General

If malware is detected, several actions can be taken. The recommended option is to try to remove the malware from the file, moving it to the quarantine if removal does not succeed. This will prevent data loss as much as possible, while making sure the malware cannot be run. The **SECURITY EVENTS** module will show a report when malware is blocked and allow you to examine quarantined files. Alternatively, Exchange Mail Security can delete infected attachments, delete the entire message or log the threat without blocking it. Immediately deleting an infected object is the most secure option, but can cause data to be removed in case of a false positive detection. Only logging threats is not recommended; this will ignore any detected malware, allowing Exchange Server and its clients to access and possibly execute it. Even though a report will be added to the **SECURITY EVENTS** module, which can help

administrators manually take action, the time window between report and action allows for infection and potentially further distribution.

17.1.1.2. On-demand scan

The Tasks module lets you schedule single and periodic scans, which function similar to client scan jobs (see chapter 9.2). The settings are identical to those for client scan jobs, except for options that are not relevant for Exchange objects. Instead of defining the scan scope using the file system, an Exchange scan job is defined to operate on specific mailboxes. As with file system scans, it is recommended to scan all objects on the server regularly. This can be achieved by planning a weekly, biweekly or monthly scan job. A full scan job can be very performance-intensive. It should be scheduled during off-peak times, such as the weekend or at night.

17.1.2. AntiSpam

A large percentage of email traffic consists of spam. While not containing malware, many of these messages are unwanted, such as mass mailings of pharmaceutical ads or illegal software sales.

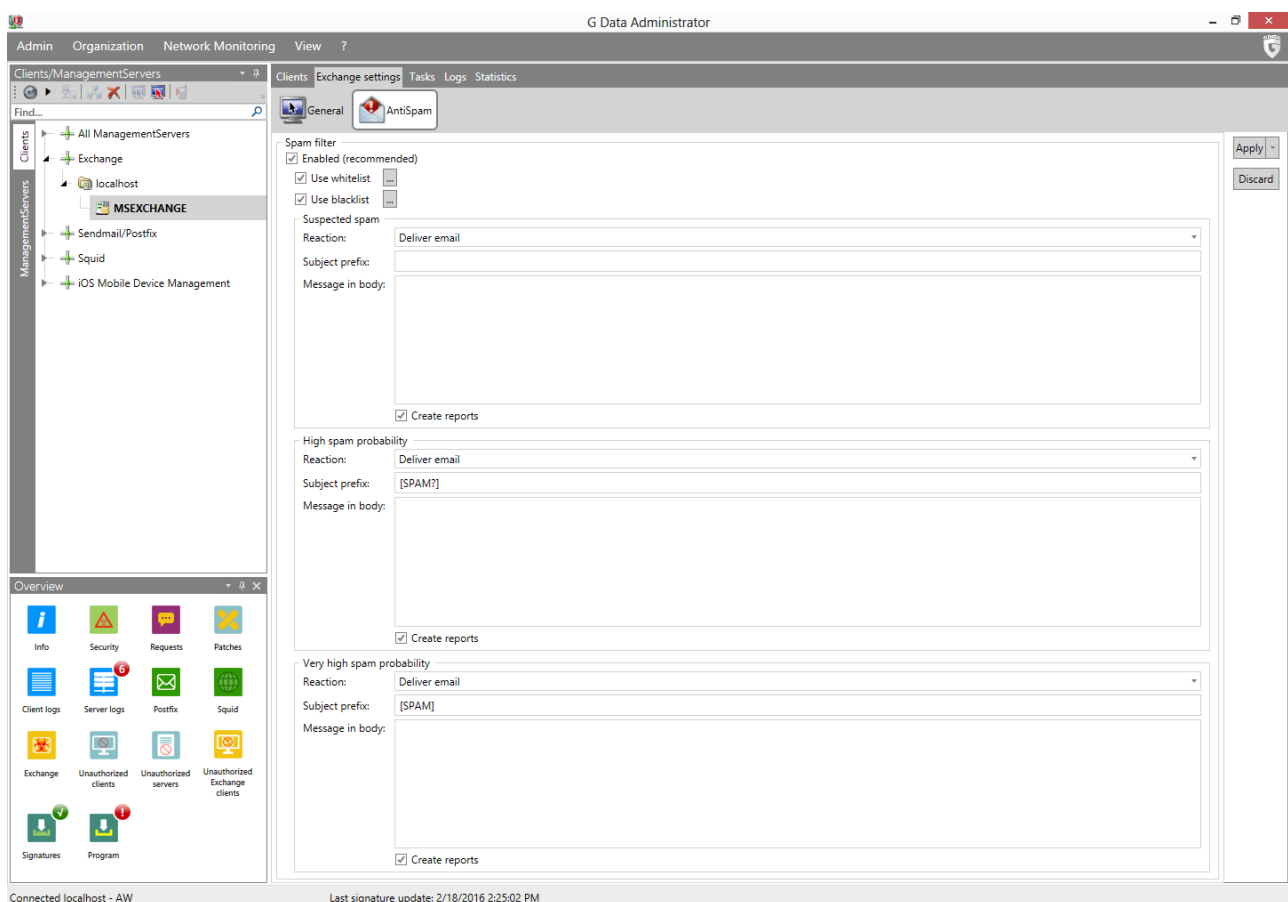


Image 63: G DATA Administrator, Exchange settings, AntiSpam

Spam filters have long been deployed on individual clients in order to remove incoming spam messages before they reach the inbox. This is an effective way to make sure that individual users do not need to spend time on reading and removing them, but it requires each client to have local spam filtering capabilities, such as a network- or client-specific configuration, an up-to-date rule set of spam definitions

and local self-learning capabilities. The Exchange plugin provides a powerful spam filter on the server level, taking care of unwanted messages before they even reach the clients. AntiSpam for Exchange is only available for Exchange servers which are running the Hub Transport role.

All incoming emails are scanned and categorized as safe, SUSPECTED SPAM, HIGH SPAM PROBABILITY OR VERY HIGH SPAM PROBABILITY. Safe messages are delivered immediately but for each of the other three categories, individual reactions can be configured. Emails can be outright rejected, which is a thorough way of dealing with spam, but might accidentally block non-spam messages as well (false positives). To make sure that no legitimate emails are accidentally rejected, you can configure spam to be moved to the Spam or Quarantine folder instead. This allows you to examine messages manually and move them back to the Inbox or remove them permanently. Alternatively, a prefix can be added to the subject. Messages will still be delivered, but users will have a way of identifying spam. Prefixes also allow for (local) filter rules to sort out unwanted messages. When spam is moved to the Spam or Quarantine folder, a report is automatically added to the SECURITY EVENTS module. When using the option to deliver or reject emails, administrators can choose whether to have reports added to the SECURITY EVENTS module or not. This option should be considered carefully, as it can generate a large number of reports.

When the Spam folder measure has been configured for one or more categories, Exchange Mail Security adds the header **X-G-Data-MailSecurity-for-Exchange-MoveToJunkFolder: True** to each spam message in that category. The messages are automatically moved to the Spam folder, a process that can be sped up by creating a server-side inbox rule. The rule will cause Exchange Server to move messages to the spam folder immediately. Using the Exchange Management Shell, execute the following PowerShell script to set the rule for all mailboxes. In the first command, **<Account>** should be replaced with the account of the user executing the script:

```
[PS] $mailboxes = get-mailbox -resultsizes unlimited | add-mailboxpermission -user <Account> -
accessrights fullaccess
[PS] $mailboxes | foreach { new-inboxrule -name "MoveToJunkFolder" -mailbox $($_.Alias) -
MoveToFolder "$($_.Alias):\Junk-E-Mail" -HeaderContainsWords "X-G-Data-MailSecurity-for-
Exchange-MoveToJunkFolder: True" -StopProcessingRules $true -confirm:$false -force }
```

In addition to the three categories, spam is filtered using a black- and whitelist approach. Email addresses and domains can be added to the whitelist in order to bypass the spam filter. Any incoming messages from whitelisted domains or addresses are deemed safe and delivered immediately. Blacklisted messages are treated as spam and will be treated according to the configuration under VERY HIGH SPAM PROBABILITY.

17.2. Linux Mail Security Gateway

Linux Mail Security Gateway is available as an optional module.

Linux Mail Security Gateway provides malware protection and antispam filtering for Sendmail and Postfix mail servers. It allows administrators to easily secure their existing mail servers, but it can also be used to set up protection for other mail servers, by configuring a Sendmail or Postfix mail server as a proxy between the internet and the actual mail server. More information about installing Linux Mail Security Gateway can be found in chapter 4.8.3.3.

17.2.1. Antivirus

Configuring antivirus protection for Sendmail and Postfix mail servers takes place in the SENDMAIL/POSTFIX module of G DATA Administrator. It is recommended to keep antivirus protection enabled at all times. Under REACTION, administrators can define the action that should be taken if an infected email is detected. In most cases, infected attachments should be deleted immediately. To rule out the possibility of losing data due to false positive detections, infected emails can alternatively be moved to the Quarantine. It is recommended to add a prefix to the email subject and/or a message to the email body, to make clear that a virus was detected.

17.2.2. AntiSpam

Similar to the Exchange plugin, Linux Mail Security Gateway also supports spam detection. When the spam filter is enabled, incoming email messages are categorized as one of four categories: safe, SUSPECTED SPAM, HIGH SPAM PROBABILITY OR VERY HIGH SPAM PROBABILITY. Safe messages are delivered immediately but for each of the other three categories, individual reactions can be configured. Emails can be deleted or delivered. Deleting an email is a thorough measure but should only be used in cases where the administrator is absolutely sure that the email is spam. In other cases, messages can still be delivered with a message added to the subject or body. This allows clients to sort out email and move it to a Spam folder based on automatic email filtering rules. In addition to the three categories, spam is filtered using a black- and whitelist approach. Email addresses and domains can be added to the whitelist in order to bypass the spam filter. Any incoming messages from whitelisted domains or addresses are deemed safe and delivered immediately. Blacklisted messages are treated as spam and will be treated according to the configuration under VERY HIGH SPAM PROBABILITY.

17.3. MailGateway

MailSecurity is available as an optional module.

MailSecurity MailGateway provides malware protection and spam filtering measures and is compatible with all mail servers²⁰. It can be integrated into the email workflow by scanning traffic before it reaches the actual mail server. Various implementations are possible, such as an installation on the existing mail server or deployment to a dedicated mail gateway server. Chapter 17.3.1 details the possibilities. Just installing the gateway, however, is not enough. Mail traffic has to be routed through MailSecurity in order to be able to scan it. After completing this configuration, the individual mail traffic protection components (malware protection and spam filter) can be set up.

17.3.1. Deployment

After the installation wizard of MailSecurity MailGateway has been run, the MailGateway server is automatically started. Like ManagementServer, it carries out its tasks in the background without demanding user interaction. However, it requires some initial configuration in order to start scanning mail traffic for malware and spam. All settings for MailGateway can be edited using MailSecurity

²⁰ When using Microsoft Exchange, Sendmail or Postfix, malware protection and antispy are most easily implemented by installing the respective plugins instead of MailGateway.

Administrator. The MailGateway setup wizard automatically installs MailSecurity Administrator on the same PC. However, like the Administrator application for ManagementServer, it can be used from any PC that can make a connection to the server on which MailGateway is running.

Launching MailSecurity Administrator for the first time, it will ask for the server name and password. The server name field will be filled automatically with the name of the server on which MailGateway has been installed. The password field can be left empty – clicking OK will prompt you for a new password. If the password needs to be changed at a later stage, click the button **CHANGE PASSWORD** on the **ADVANCED** tab of the **OPTIONS** window of MailSecurity Administrator. If the password has been lost and logging in to MailSecurity Administrator is no longer possible, the password can be reset by removing the key `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\G DATA\AVKSmtplib\pw` (Windows 64-bit) or `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\G DATA\AVKSmtplib\pw` (32-bit) from the Registry on the MailGateway server.

MailSecurity Administrator opens on the **STATUS** page, displaying information about the main functions of the gateway server. Each status message can be double-clicked to open the relevant part of the **OPTIONS** menu. When the program is started for the first time, some functions will show as being disabled. As part of the post-deployment tasks, automatic virus signature updates and mail server port settings will be configured. Subsequently, MailGateway's malware protection, spam filter, and custom filters can be set up.

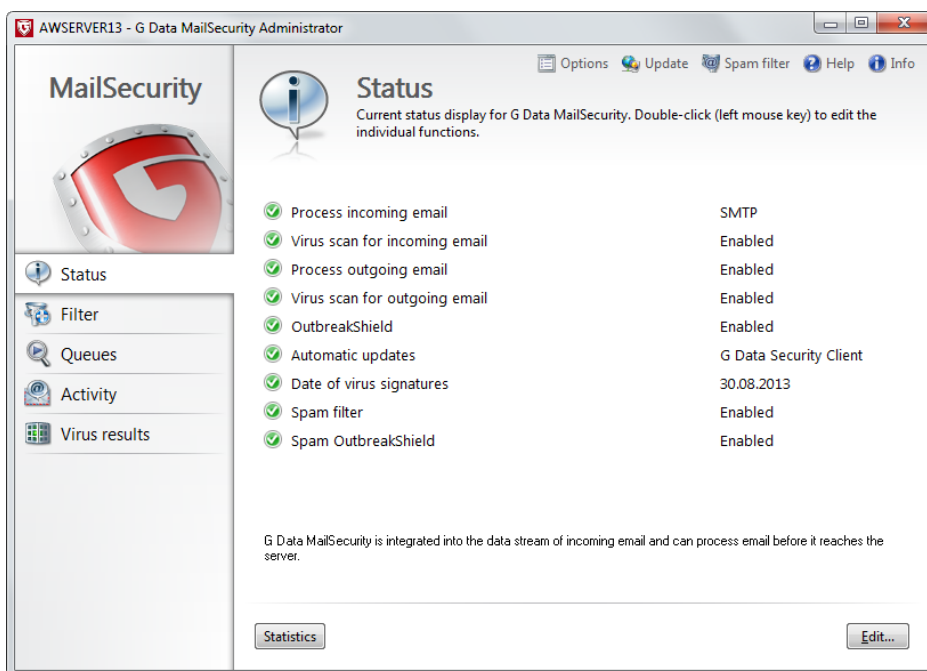


Image 62: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Status

17.3.1.1. Virus signature updates

An important first step is to configure automatic updates for the virus signature database. Click the **UPDATE** option in the top menu bar to open the **INTERNET UPDATE** window and choose one of two update methods. It is recommended to deploy G DATA Security Client before deploying MailSecurity MailGateway (see chapter 4.8). Not only does this ensure that malware cannot infect the gateway server,

it also allows MailGateway to scan incoming and outgoing email with the Security Client's virus signatures, eliminating the need to maintain its own virus signature database.

If MailGateway is not running in a ManagementServer network, the alternative is to configure it to download its own virus signatures. To obtain updates, MailSecurity will log in to the online G DATA update servers, for which it requires access data. Click **SETTINGS AND SCHEDULING** to open the update settings and choose the tab **ACCESS DATA**. If user name and password have been obtained previously (for example, if the software has already been activated), they can be entered directly. Alternatively, click **REGISTER WITH SERVER** to enter your registration number. After registering with G DATA, user name and password will be generated automatically. Make sure to write them down somewhere in order to be able to use them in case of a reinstallation. After entering access data, an update schedule should be defined on the **INTERNET UPDATE SCHEDULE** tab. To make sure that MailGateway can scan emails with the latest virus signatures, an hourly update should be defined. If the computer on which MailGateway has been installed uses a proxy server to connect to the internet, it should be defined on the **INTERNET SETTINGS** tab. This is also the place to enter login data, if required to set up an internet connection.

17.3.1.2. Email streams

It is important to distinguish between three possible email streams to be scanned by MailGateway: incoming SMTP email (from the internet into the network), outgoing SMTP email (from the network to the internet), and POP3 (only for incoming email). Not every network uses every type of email communication. For the protocols that are in use, port configuration on both MailGateway and mail server is essential to route email streams through MailGateway before delivering them to the mail server. Which ports need to be changed is determined by the deployment type.

Depending on the mail server, protocol and port settings may be hard to access. In various TechPapers, G DATA offers additional configuration support for specific products. See the following TechPapers for more information: #0149 (Tobit David), #0150 (AVM Ken!), #0151 (Microsoft Exchange Server 2010), and #0152 (Microsoft Exchange Server 2007).

Deployment 1: On the mail server (with mail server port changes)

The advantage of deploying MailGateway to the mail server is that no separate server has to be configured; the downside is the need to carefully configure ports for SMTP and POP3. To avoid changes to the local firewall or DNS records, some mail server ports should be changed. An example configuration is the following: MailSecurity receives retrieval requests for POP3 on port 7110 (either from clients or from a POP3 connector on the mail server), connects to the internet POP3 mail server, collects email, processes it and delivers it. Inbound SMTP mail (from the internet) will be received by MailSecurity on port 25, processed, and forwarded to the internal mail server on port 7125. Outbound SMTP mail will be received by the internal mail server on port 7125, forwarded to MailSecurity on port 7025, processed, and sent. The internal mail server will operate at SMTP port 7125. Exchange clients do not need to be reconfigured, but clients that send mail using SMTP settings have to be configured to connect to that port. The port settings for MailSecurity and the mail server looks as follows:

Traffic	MailGateway	Mail server
SMTP (incoming)	25	7125
SMTP (outgoing)	7025	7125
POP3	7110	110

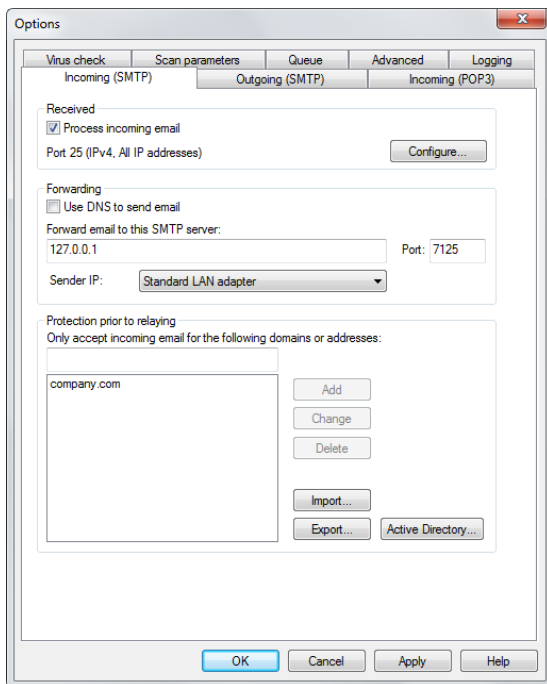


Image 63: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Incoming (SMTP)

To allow MailGateway to scan incoming SMTP email, open the **OPTIONS** dialog and select the **INCOMING (SMTP)** tab. Under **RECEIVED**, enable the option **PROCESS INCOMING MAIL**. MailGateway operates at port 25 and the mail server uses a different port (for example, 7125). Once incoming SMTP email has been scanned, it is delivered to the mail server according to the settings listed under **Forwarding**. By default, **USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL** is checked. This option uses the local MX record to determine where to deliver email, which will only work if the MX record lists the mail server. Since MailGateway will be listed in the MX record in many cases, it is safer to disable **USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL**. The mail server IP and port can then be specifically defined. Enter **127.0.0.1** as IP address and enter the mail server port in the Port field (in this example **7125**).

To scan outgoing email, open the **OUTGOING (SMTP)** tab. Enable **PROCESS OUTGOING EMAIL** and enter a port number. The simplest configuration is to define a port that is different from the **INCOMING (SMTP)** port, in this example 7025. However, if you decide to use the same port for incoming and outgoing SMTP traffic, MailGateway needs to be able to tell apart incoming and outgoing SMTP traffic. This can be achieved by adding **127.0.0.1** and the server's IP address (for example, **192.168.1.2**) to **IP ADDRESSES/SUBNETS OF COMPUTERS THAT SEND OUTGOING EMAIL**. Outgoing email can be delivered in two ways. MailGateway can directly deliver email using the target's DNS record. This is the recommended configuration. If **USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL** is disabled, you can define an SMTP server to which outgoing email should be forwarded. If any authentication is required, select the appropriate procedure in the **AUTHENTICATION** window.

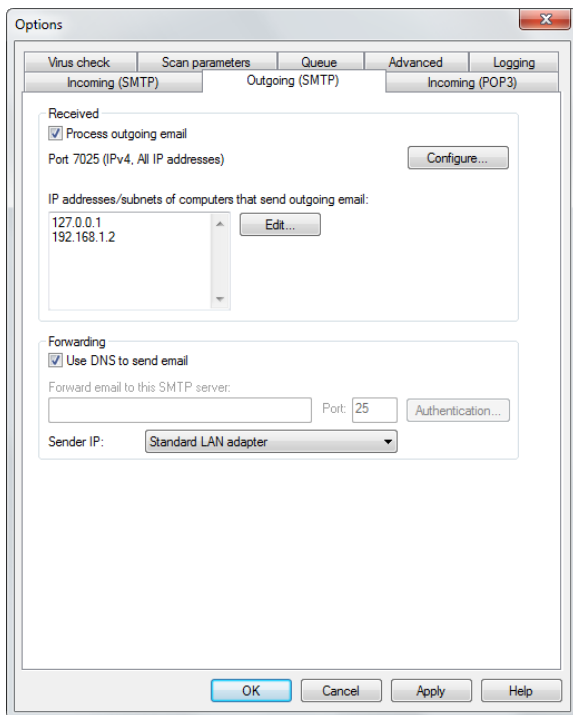


Image 64: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Outgoing (SMTP)

POP3 scans can be configured on the INCOMING (POP3) tab. Enable PROCESS POP3 ENQUIRIES and enter the port on which MailGateway will receive POP3 enquiries (**7110**). Tick PREVENT EMAIL PROGRAM TIMEOUT to prevent the recipient from getting a timeout error from their email software if POP3 retrieval is taking too long. Under COLLECTION, enter the POP3 server from which email should be collected. This is usually the POP3 server of the internet service provider. MailGateway will use the same login which the client is using in its POP3 enquiry. Under FILTER, you can define a replacement text for email messages that are rejected by the malware protection or the spam filter.

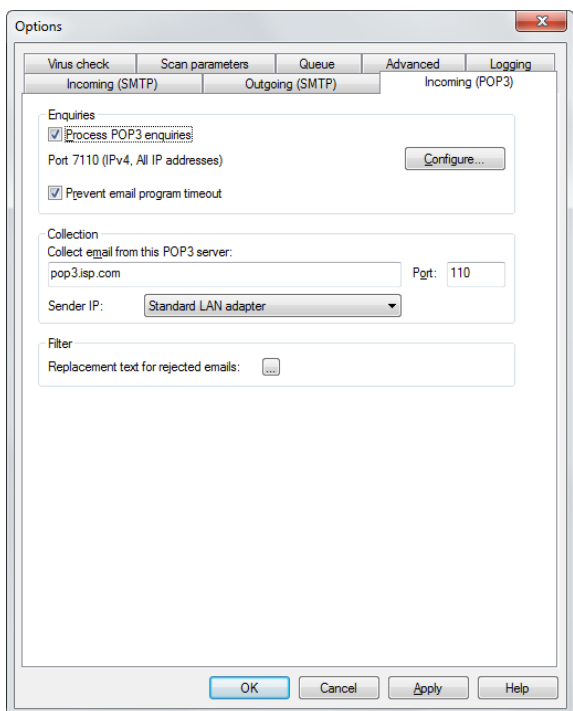


Image 65: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Incoming (POP3)

After having set up MailGateway, the mail server settings should be updated. Change the server for incoming POP3 email to the server's IP address (**192.168.1.2**) and add the MailGateway port (**7110**). The port for incoming and outgoing SMTP email should be changed to **7125**. To properly route outgoing email, change the mail server's setting for outgoing SMTP email to the server's IP address and add the MailGateway port (**7025**). Disable any SMTP authentication, because it will be carried out by MailGateway.

Because the SMTP port of the mail server has been changed, clients that send email using SMTP settings should send outgoing email to the new port. Change the settings of local email clients to reflect this (SMTP port 7125). Clients that send email using Exchange do not need to have their settings updated.

Deployment 2: On the mail server (without mail server port changes)

If changes to the mail server ports are not feasible, for example if there are simply too many clients to reconfigure, the mail server can remain operational on port 25, and MailGateway can receive and send SMTP mail using ports 7025 and 7125 respectively. However, to ensure that MailSecurity will still be the first security layer, the local firewall needs to be updated to forward incoming SMTP traffic to MailGateway's non-standard port 7025. The port settings for this scenario look as follows:

Traffic	MailGateway	Mail server
SMTP (incoming)	7025	25
SMTP (outgoing)	7125	25
POP3	7110	110

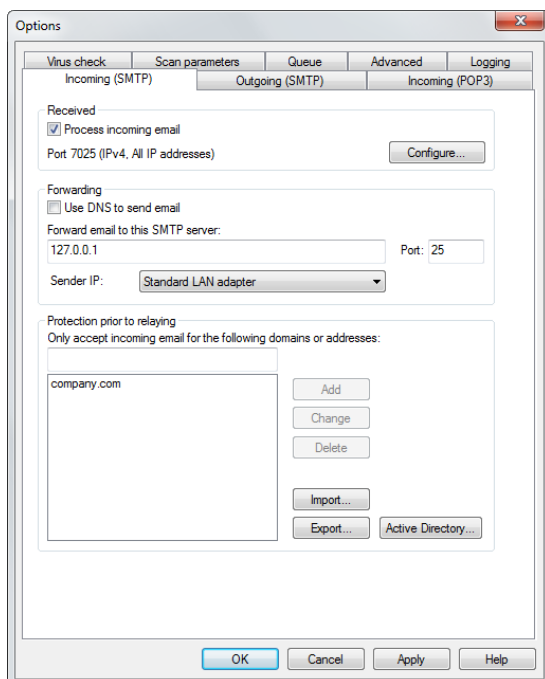


Image 66: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Incoming (SMTP)

To allow MailGateway to scan incoming SMTP email, open the OPTIONS dialog and select the INCOMING (SMTP) tab. Under Received, enable the option PROCESS INCOMING EMAIL. MailGateway operates at non-standard port 7025. Once incoming SMTP email has been scanned, it is delivered to the mail server according to the settings listed under Forwarding. By default, USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL is checked. This option

uses the local MX record to determine where to deliver email, which will only work if the MX record lists the mail server. Since MailGateway will be listed in the MX record in many cases, it is safer to disable USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL. The mail server IP and port can then be specifically defined. Enter **127.0.0.1** as IP ADDRESS and enter the mail server port in the PORT field (in this example **25**).

To scan outgoing email, open the OUTGOING (SMTP) tab. Enable PROCESS OUTGOING EMAIL and enter a port number. The simplest configuration is to define a port that is different from the INCOMING (SMTP) port; in this example **7125** is used. However, if you decide to use the same port for incoming and outgoing SMTP traffic, MailGateway needs to be able to tell apart incoming and outgoing SMTP traffic. This can be achieved by adding **127.0.0.1** and the server's IP address (for example, **192.168.1.2**) to IP ADDRESSES/SUBNETS OF COMPUTERS THAT SEND OUTGOING EMAIL. Outgoing email can be delivered in two ways. MailGateway can directly deliver email using the target's DNS record. This is the recommended configuration. If USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL IS DISABLED, you can define an SMTP server to which outgoing email should be forwarded. If any authentication is required, select the appropriate procedure in the AUTHENTICATION window.

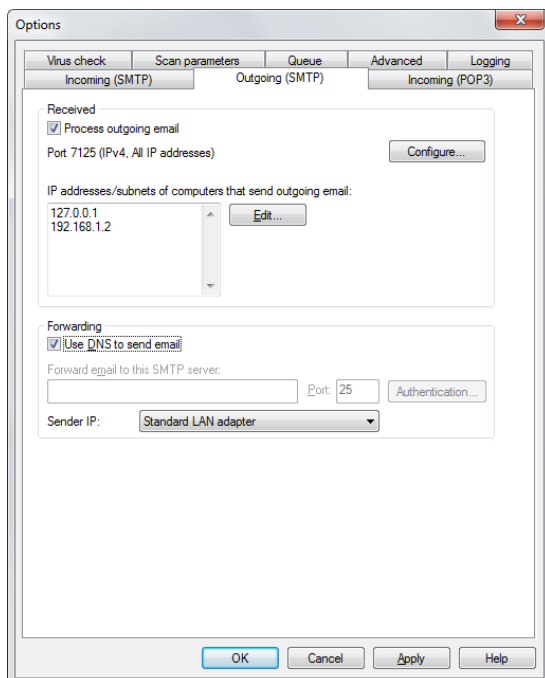


Image 67: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Outgoing (SMTP)

The settings for POP3 email retrieval are identical to those of deployment 1.

The port settings for the mail server itself do not need to be changed, but it does need to be able to locate MailGateway. Change the server for incoming POP3 email to the server's IP address (**192.168.1.2**) and add the MailGateway port (**7110**). To properly route outgoing email, change the mail server settings for outgoing SMTP email to the server's IP address and add the MailGateway port (**7125**). Disable any SMTP authentication, because it will be carried out by MailGateway. Because the mail server is still using port 25 for incoming and outgoing SMTP email, a network-level change is necessary to make sure MailSecurity receives incoming SMTP email. The router or firewall should forward incoming SMTP traffic on port 25 to MailGateway on port 7025.

Deployment 3: Dedicated gateway server

The alternative to an installation on the mail server is deploying MailGateway to its own server. Mail server ports do not need to be changed, but incoming email needs to be delivered to MailGateway first, before it arrives at the mail server. This can be achieved in a couple of ways. The MX record in the DNS entry for the network's domain can be changed from the mail server's IP to MailGateway's IP, redirection can be set up in the firewall, or the original IP address of the mail server can be assigned to MailGateway. In this example, the ports are configured as follows:

Traffic	MailGateway	Mail server
SMTP (incoming)	25	25
SMTP (outgoing)	7025	25
POP3	110	110

To allow MailGateway to scan incoming SMTP email, open the **OPTIONS** dialog and select the **INCOMING (SMTP)** tab. Under **RECEIVED**, enable the option **PROCESS INCOMING MAIL**. MailGateway operates at port **25**. Once incoming SMTP email has been scanned, it is delivered to the mail server according to the settings listed under **FORWARDING**. By default, **USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL** is checked. This option uses the local MX record to determine where to deliver email, which will only work if the MX record lists the mail server. Since MailGateway will be listed in the MX record in many cases, it is safer to disable **USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL**. The mail server IP and port can then be specifically defined. Enter the mail server's IP address (in this example **192.168.1.3**) and enter the mail server port in the **PORT** field (in this example **25**).

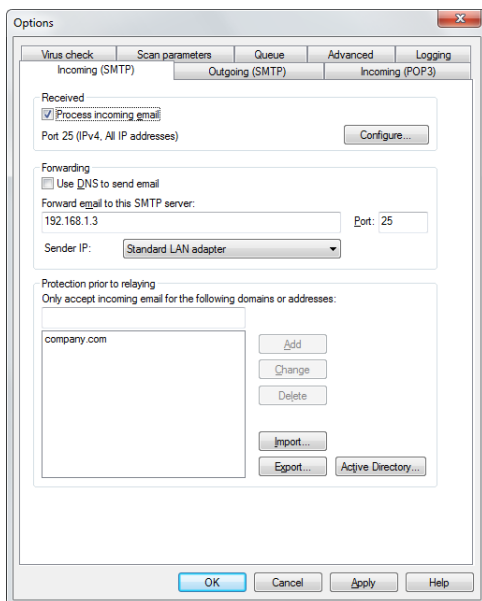


Image 68: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Incoming (SMTP)

To scan outgoing email, open the **OUTGOING (SMTP)** tab. Enable **PROCESS OUTGOING EMAIL** and enter a port number. The simplest configuration is to define a port that is different from the **INCOMING (SMTP)** port, in this example **7025** is used. However, if you decide to use the same port for incoming and outgoing SMTP traffic, MailGateway needs to be able to tell apart incoming and outgoing SMTP traffic. This can be achieved by adding the mail server's IP address (for example, **192.168.1.3**) to **IP ADDRESSES/SUBNETS OF COMPUTERS THAT SEND OUTGOING EMAIL**. Outgoing email can be delivered in two ways. MailGateway can directly deliver email using the target's DNS record. This is the recommended configuration. If **USE DNS TO SEND EMAIL**

is disabled, you can define an SMTP server to which outgoing email should be forwarded. If any authentication is required, select the appropriate procedure in the AUTHENTICATION window.

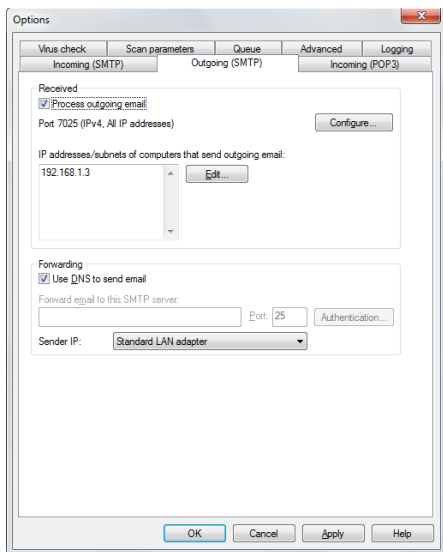


Image 69: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Outgoing (SMTP)

POP3 scans can be configured on the INCOMING (POP3) tab. Enable PROCESS POP3 ENQUIRIES and enter the port on which MailGateway will receive POP3 enquiries (**110**). Tick PREVENT EMAIL PROGRAM TIMEOUT to prevent the recipient from getting a timeout error from their email software if POP3 retrieval is taking too long. Under COLLECTION, enter the POP3 server from which email should be collected. This is usually the POP3 server of the internet service provider. MailGateway will use the same login which the client is using in its POP3 enquiry. Under FILTER, you can define a replacement text for email messages that are rejected by the malware protection or the spam filter.

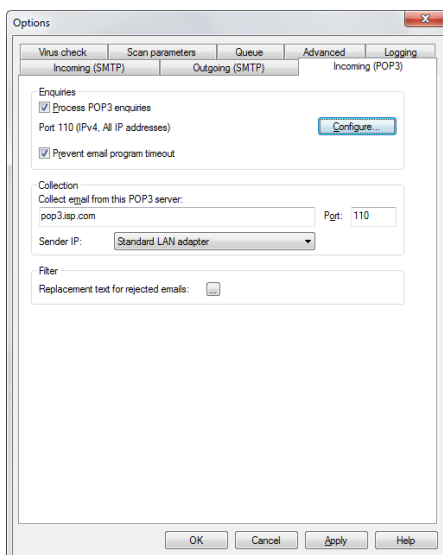


Image 70: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Options, Incoming (POP3)

After setting up MailGateway, the mail server settings should also be updated. Change the server for incoming POP3 email to the MailGateway's IP address (**192.168.1.2**) and add the MailGateway port (**110**). To properly route outgoing email, change the mail server settings for outgoing SMTP email to the

MailGateway's IP address and add the MailGateway port (**25**). Disable any SMTP authentication, because it will be carried out by MailGateway.

The MailGateway server should replace the mail server to receive incoming SMTP email. This can be achieved by configuring the router or firewall to redirect incoming SMTP traffic to the MailGateway server (192.168.1.2). Alternatively, the DNS MX record can be changed to MailGateway's (external) IP address. Finally, the IP address of the mail server can be assigned to MailGateway, and a new IP address can be assigned to the mail server.

17.3.1.3. SMTP relay protection

When enabling the processing of incoming SMTP email, MailGateway should be protected against relay abuse. On the INCOMING (SMTP) tab, under PROTECTION PRIOR TO RELAYING, define domains for which MailGateway accepts email. If no domain is added, no incoming SMTP email is accepted! By adding only the company domain(s), email for other domains is automatically dropped, making sure spammers cannot use the MailGateway server to distribute unwanted email. If incoming email should be accepted for all domains, add the domain *.*. As an alternative to adding domains manually, Active Directory can be used to import a list of addresses. Email to addresses that are not on the list is automatically dropped. Click ACTIVE DIRECTORY to configure AD server settings and update interval.

17.3.1.4. Multiple POP3 servers

If email should be collected from more than one POP3 server, the standard deployment scenario needs to be slightly altered. Instead of defining one POP3 server in the MailGateway settings, the POP3 server can be defined for each account on mail server (when collecting POP3 using Exchange, for example) or client (when collecting POP3 email on clients). In MailSecurity Administrator, open the INCOMING (POP3) tab of the OPTIONS window. Leave all existing settings as-is, but remove the POP3 server address that has been entered under COLLECTION. In the mail server or local client settings, define an account for each POP3 server that needs to be checked. As POP3 server, enter the IP address and port of MailGateway. Edit the user name field for each account, adding the POP3 server name in front of the user name, separating both values by a colon. For example, to check the account for user name **company** on server pop3.isp.com, enter **pop3.isp.com:company**. The password field should contain the account password.

17.3.1.5. Queue

MailGateway processes email messages immediately upon receipt. Malware scans and spam filtering are carried out and the message is forwarded to the mail server according to the deployment settings. The receiving mail server, however, may not always be reachable. Email messages that cannot be delivered end up in the queue. MailGateway will repeatedly retry to deliver queued messages for a certain amount of time. To view the messages that are currently queued, use the QUEUES module of MailSecurity Administrator. Using the INCOMING/OUTGOING button, you can switch between viewing the queue of incoming and outgoing messages. For each message, the target host, sender, next repeat, and status are shown. No action is required for any of the queued messages; MailGateway automatically takes care of them. Optionally, MailGateway can try to deliver the message immediately by clicking REPEAT NOW. Using the DELETE button, queued messages can be permanently deleted from the queue, preventing delivery.

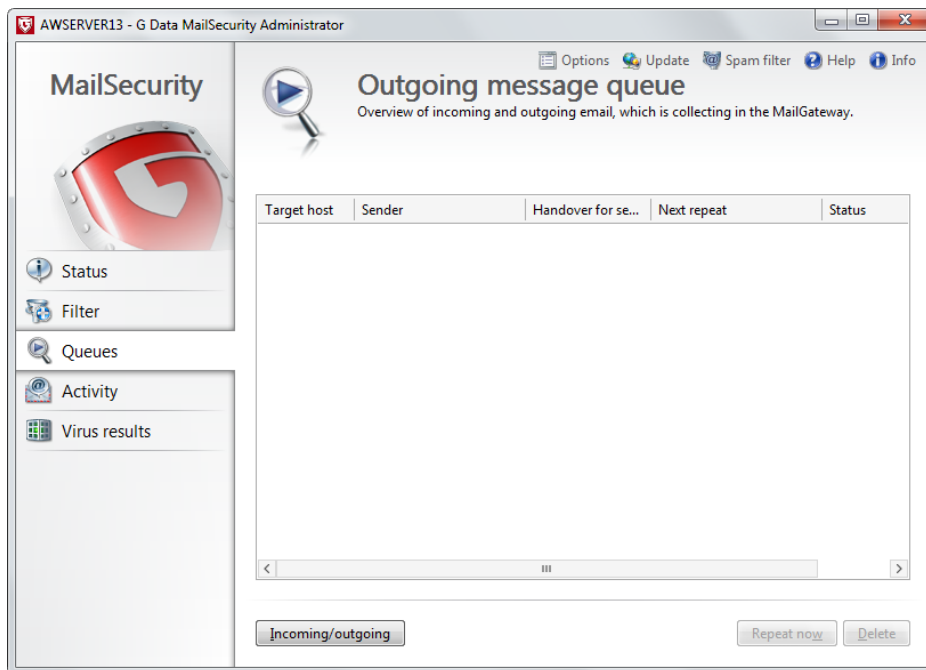


Image 71: G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, Queue

MailGateway's handling of queued messages can be configured in the **OPTIONS** window on the **QUEUE** tab. It will regularly try to deliver messages that are in the queue up to a maximum amount of time. Under **ERROR WAITING TIME (HOURS)**, this maximum can be defined. The default value is **24**, which means that the message will be discarded if it still has not been delivered after 24 hours. Under **REPEAT INTERVAL (HOURS)**, retry intervals can be defined. MailGateway will try to deliver queued messages in these intervals until the maximum amount of time is reached. The default values are **0.25, 0.5, 1, 4**. This means that MailGateway's first retry will be after 15 minutes, the second will be half an hour later, the third will be an hour later, and then every 4 hours until the maximum. The default values can be changed to fit individual needs. For example, retries can be scheduled with shorter intervals (for example, **0.25** to retry every 15 minutes until the maximum is reached). This will prevent further delays if a mail server was only offline temporarily, but can cause an increased amount of mail traffic. In any case, email senders should be informed if their message cannot be delivered (yet). They can be notified every few hours (the default value is **4**). Avoid sending too many notifications to senders – only if the maximum waiting time is changed, the notification interval should be changed proportionally. Finally, the number of messages in the queue can be limited. This option is disabled by default, because limiting the queue leads to message loss if the maximum is reached: emails that cannot be delivered are deleted immediately if there are too many messages in the queue already. Only if the number of messages in the queue inhibits performance or otherwise causes problems should the queue size limit be enabled.

17.3.2. Administration and migration

Having deployed and configured malware protection, spam filter and custom filters, MailGateway carries out its scans and filtering without intervention. No confirmation is needed for MailGateway to reject or remove email messages. However, it is recommended to monitor MailGateway's performance and actions, to make sure that no unexpected actions are taken. The most direct method to monitor MailGateway's handling of spam is to configure the forwarding of spam messages (see chapter 17.3.4.10).

On a more general level, administrators can use MailSecurity Administrator to review MailGateway's actions. The **ACTIVITY** module shows a log of actions carried out by MailGateway, such as email messages being received, processed or sent. If the database for statistical assessment has been installed (see chapter 4.2.4.3), the **STATUS** module shows a **STATISTICS** button. The statistics window shows general statistics about processed email messages, as well as top 10 lists for spam addresses, spam IP addresses and detected viruses. The statistics can be shown for each of the traffic streams that MailGateway analyzes (SMTP incoming, SMTP outgoing and/or POP3 incoming). To configure the statistics, open the **LOGGING** tab of the **OPTIONS** window. Select **SAVE IN THE DATABASE** to save statistics about email traffic in the database, enabling analysis. Alternatively, some details about the traffic can be saved to a log file (saved in MailGateway's installation folder, by default C:\Program Files (x86)\G DATA\G DATA MailSecurity\maillog.txt). The log file contains timestamp, sender and recipient, mail size and spam value (see chapter 17.3.4.10). To limit file size, logging can then be limited to junk mail only, or to a maximum number of emails.

In case MailGateway is being migrated to another server, its settings can easily be exported. In the **OPTIONS** menu, the **ADVANCED** tab offers the button **EXPORT**. It allows administrators to save an XML file containing MailGateway's settings. On the new server, it can be imported using the **IMPORT** button. Similarly, existing custom filters (see chapter 17.3.4) should be exported. The **IMPORT** and **EXPORT** buttons in the **FILTER** module can be used to manage filter settings as XML files. If the content filter has been enabled (see chapter 17.3.4.2), its configuration needs to be imported separately to retain its progress. Using the **Windows SERVICES** panel, stop the MailGateway service on the old and new MailGateway server. The configuration file is located in MailGateway's **FILTER** folder (by default: C:\Program Files (x86)\G DATA\G DATA MailSecurity\filter). Copy the files **BayesSpam.txt** and **BayesNotSpam.txt** into the **FILTER** folder on the target server and restart the MailGateway service.

17.3.3. Malware protection

Email remains a very popular attack vector for criminals. Many forms of malware are distributed via email, as part of generic spam runs as well as targeted attacks trying to gain access to a company network. To make sure that malicious programs do not end up infecting network clients, incoming email should be cleaned of malware. At the same time, email that is being sent by network clients should also be checked. Infected clients may unknowingly send malware-infected emails, putting external email recipients in danger. MailGateway scans incoming and outgoing traffic for malware using the same scan technology that is included in its Security Client. Using two scan engines, malware is detected before it reaches the recipient. Various measures can be carried out, such as disinfecting, renaming or deleting the infected object.

17.3.3.1. Inbound and outbound email

The **OPTIONS** window of MailSecurity Administrator can be used to configure malware detection. On the tab **VIRUS CHECK**, parameters for scanning inbound and outbound email can be defined. It is recommended that both inbound and outbound email streams are checked for malware. For inbound email, the most important choice is whether to deliver infected messages or not. The recommended option is to try to disinfect infected messages or attachments, and deleting them if disinfection is not possible. This will prevent unnecessary data loss while ensuring that infected content will never be delivered to end users.

Alternatively, infected attachments or messages can be directly deleted. This is the most secure measure, but may lead to data loss if an object is incorrectly identified as malware. Renaming infected attachments is the third option, but is not recommended. While this does prevent direct access to malware, end users could still get infected if the file is renamed back and opened. To notify the recipient of the email message that malware has been found, a virus alert can be added to the subject and body of the infected message. This is recommended to make sure that the recipient is aware of the fact that the message has been altered and is no longer the message as it was originally sent – emphasizing the fact that the virus has been removed and infection is no longer possible. If the email message includes a password-protected attachment, the attachment cannot be scanned. To warn the recipient, a notice can be inserted into the message body, explaining that one or more attachments have not been scanned. In addition to the recipient notice, you can define one or more email addresses (separated by semicolons) that should receive an alert when malware is found. For standalone MailGateway installations, this is an easily configurable way to make sure the administrator is informed. If MailGateway has been deployed in the same network as an existing ManagementServer installation, it is recommended to use the option `REPORT VIRUS RESULTS TO G DATA MANAGEMENTSERVER` instead.

For outbound mail, the security options are slightly different. Although outbound messages are scanned by the same scan engines as incoming messages, the reaction to infected messages is different: they are not sent. Disinfection or renaming attachments is not possible, as delivery of messages with possible malware should be prevented at all cost. If malware is detected, the sender can be notified. It is recommended to send a notification to explain that the message will not be delivered. If malware is not detected, MailGateway can attach a report to outbound messages, including version information. This will inform the recipient that the message has been scanned for malware before it was sent. As with inbound messages, you can define email addresses to which an alert should be sent in case of a malware infection.

17.3.3.2. Scan parameters

The settings for the malware scan can be customized on the `SCAN PARAMETERS` tab. The default configuration provides optimal protection. Only if problems with performance or with one of the individual protection modules arise should any of the scan parameters be changed. If the scan process with two engines is too demanding, one of the engines can be disabled. This will provide better performance but will slightly decrease the level of security. Scans can be limited to certain file types, such as program files or documents, or a custom list of extensions, but the safest option is to scan all files (enabled by default). Heuristics are also enabled by default, providing additional security by recognizing unknown malware based on typical characteristics. Archives can be excluded from scans by disabling `CHECK ARCHIVES`. If a file within an archive is found to be infected, the whole archive is renamed or removed. To prevent accidental data loss, checking archives for malware can be disabled, but this will lead to decreased security. OutbreakShield provides protection against mass mailings containing malware, even before virus signatures become available, and should be enabled in most cases. It does not disinfect email messages that contain malware. Under `SETTINGS`, a replacement text for the mail body can be entered, so that recipients will know that an email was blocked by OutbreakShield. Finally, phishing protection blocks emails that try to obtain passwords, credit card numbers, or other personally identifiable information by posing as an email from a legitimate institution.

17.3.4. Filters

Malware poses a threat to email recipients, but it is not the only kind of content that warrants filtering. In many corporate environments, email is only meant to be used for business-related communication. Inappropriate, illegal, distracting or generally unwanted contents should be filtered out, such as spam. In addition to its protection against malware, MailGateway offers several filters that can be used to filter out email messages that do not meet company policies or are otherwise redundant.

To manage filters, open the `FILTER` module of MailSecurity Administrator. It provides an overview of all current filters. Under the list, a group of buttons offers functionality that applies to all filters. Settings can be imported and exported for all filters at once (see chapter 17.3.2). Using the `STATISTICS` button, some basic statistics can be shown for each filter: the number of email messages that has been processed and the number that matched the specific filter. To manage filters, use the `NEW`, `EDIT` and `DELETE` buttons. To enable or disable a filter, use the filter's checkbox.

Each filter has specific options, which can be edited upon adding the filter or by clicking the `EDIT` button. All filters have a `NAME` and `NOTE` field. The filter name can be edited to tell filters apart in the filter list. This is especially useful for filters that can have multiple instances, such as the `SENDER` and `RECIPIENT` filter. The `NOTE` will also be displayed in the list – a useful place for comments about the specific filter settings.

Similar to the measures that can be configured for malware-infected files, MailGateway can take several actions when an email message matches a filter. Most filters can be configured to reject messages that match the filter. Additionally, the message sender can be notified with a customizable text which informs the sender that the recipient has not received the message. An alert can be sent to one or more persons – a powerful measure for administrators that want to keep track of the status email traffic in the network. Alerts can include the email message that matched the filter. While this may be useful for analysis, messages may include malware-infected or otherwise inappropriate content and any forwarded messages should be handled with care.

Most filters can be applied to incoming as well as outgoing emails (except in cases where the filter logically only applies to one traffic type, such as the greylist filter). To provide safety for end users within the company, enabling filters for incoming traffic is recommended. Enabling one or more filters for outgoing email makes sure that outgoing corporate email will meet safety requirements.

17.3.4.1. Attachments

Attachments have long been a primary way of spreading malware. Early malware would distribute itself by sending an email to all contacts in the victim's address book with a malicious executable attached. Contemporary malware authors often execute targeted attacks, emailing only a select group of recipients with malware in the hopes of gaining access to valuable documents on their PCs. While malware will usually be picked up by the target PC's file system monitor, the risk can be even further decreased by having MailGateway filter risky attachments.

The attachment filter can be run in blacklist or whitelist mode. In blacklist mode, attachments are not allowed if they are on the list. In whitelist mode, only the listed attachment types are allowed; all others are removed. As with most filtering modules, using a whitelist mode provides the largest amount of security. By disallowing everything except previously approved extensions, even unknown attack vectors

are blocked. However, legitimate content may also be blocked if it is of a file type that has not been explicitly defined as safe. Blacklist mode can be used to explicitly prohibit all known dangerous file types. It protects against the most frequently used malware attachment types, but may let malware pass if it uses an attack vector that has not been explicitly defined as unsafe.

The attachment types to be filtered can be entered in FILE EXTENSIONS list. Use semicolons to separate multiple extensions. When using the filter in blacklist mode, extensions to block commonly include executables, such as .exe, .scr and .com. Scripts can have extensions such as .bat, .vbs, .js and .cmd and should also be blocked. Registry setting files (.reg) can also be blocked. Archive files, such as .zip, .rar and .7z, may contain malware and can be filtered. Any other extension may be blocked, for example if it does not meet company policies. When whitelisting extensions, the list should be based on the most commonly received file formats, such as .txt, .doc or .jpg. Whitelisting attachments does not necessarily mean that they are safe. Documents could still contain malware. MailGateway's malware protection should scan the attachments and clients should enable email scan or file system monitor. By enabling the option ALSO FILTER ATTACHMENTS IN EMBEDDED EMAIL, MailGateway even filters attachments if they are nested within an embedded email file. This option should remain enabled, to make sure that even messages that are being forwarded as an embedded mail file are secured.

When MailGateway detects one or more offending attachments in an email message, it can take multiple measures. When ONLY RENAME ATTACHMENTS is enabled, the attachment is renamed by adding the value added in the SUFFIX field. This is useful to prevent executables (including Office documents) from being run, as users would have to save and rename the file in order to run it. For additional security, uncheck ONLY RENAME ATTACHMENTS – MailGateway will then delete any attachment that matches the extension list (blacklist) or any attachment that does not match the list (whitelist). Removing the attachment is recommended, but may lead to data loss. If all client PCs are protected by a file system monitor, attachments can be renamed instead of removed, but this is not recommended. In addition to renaming or removing the attachment, a message can be inserted in the mail body. By adding a message, recipients can be informed that a virus was found – clearing any confusion that may arise from attachments being referred to in the message body.

17.3.4.2. Content

The content filter can be used as an extension of MailGateway's built-in spam filter. While the latter has been optimized for spam detection, including dedicated word lists and spam-centered modules, the content filter can be customized to filter any type of content. For example, content that is not related to work can be filtered out by adding filters for popular off-topic expressions. Another example is filtering sensitive content that could benefit competitors.

The type of content to be filtered can be entered in the form of a regular expression. Regular expressions are very powerful tools to match complex character sequences. Using the NEW button, a regular expression can be built by entering several search terms that will be matched. This provides help for administrators that are not familiar with regular expressions. Alternatively, online resources about

regular expressions can provide guidance²¹. The SEARCH SCOPE can be defined to include email HEADER, SUBJECT, MAIL TEXT, HTML TEXT and/or EMBEDDED EMAIL.

17.3.4.3. External references

Emails often contain HTML references to external content, such as images, links or scripts. While external content can be useful, for example for email layout templates, it is often used by spammers and malware distributors. Using external images, spammers can gauge email account activity: by embedding individualized image links into emails, a spammer can observe the email client downloading the image, thus knowing that the email has been read. In addition, the client IP address could be logged. To prevent external content from being downloaded at all, external references can be completely filtered out of incoming emails. The filter has no further options.

17.3.4.4. Greylist

The greylist filter takes advantage of the fact that spammers usually do not make use of an email queuing system: a spam message is usually only sent once – the spammer's mail server does not try to resend the message. Legitimate mail servers try to resend email messages if they cannot be delivered on the first attempt. When the greylist filter is enabled, MailGateway does not immediately accept incoming emails. Instead, it shows the sending server a request to resend the message. Legitimate mail servers will honor the request and resend the message – spam servers will not. If the message is resent, it passes the greylist filter. Additionally, the combination of sender address, recipient address and sending mail server identification is then greylisted, to make sure that future email messages are delivered immediately.

In order to enable the greylist filter, the spam filter must be active (see chapter 17.3.4.10). In addition, Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 Express must have been installed during the installation of MailGateway (see chapter 4.2.4.3).

Upon enabling the greylist filter, several options can be defined. Under WAITING TIME, the amount of time for which an email is held back can be edited. The default is 0 minutes for normal emails (the greylist is effectively turned off) and 30 minutes for emails that have been classified as suspicious. A message is deemed suspicious if the email header looks like it has been tampered with, for example if a reverse lookup reveals discrepancies between mail server name and IP address. A suspicious message will only be delivered if the sending server resends the message after at least 30 minutes. If the sending server resends the message before the 30 minutes have expired, it is told to try again later.

To keep the greylist up to date, the combination of sender address, recipient address and sending mail server identification is only greylisted for a specific time. Two separate whitelist LIFETIMES can be set: with or without email exchange. The value WITHOUT EXCHANGING EMAIL applies to greylisted emails that are not resent. If the sending mail server does not resend the email within this amount of time (default 2 days), it is removed from the greylist. This measure makes sure that the greylist is not filled with entries from spam servers that send an email only once without retrying. The value WITH EMAIL EXCHANGE governs greylist entries for which the sending mail server has resent the email. Every time an email is received that

²¹ A starting point is the Wikipedia entry for „Regular expressions“, which includes a set of examples: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression#Examples.

matches the greylist entry, it is delivered immediately and the greylist timer is reset. This ensures swift delivery for recurring emails, such as newsletters.

17.3.4.5. HTML scripts

Although HTML in emails can be used legitimately, for example to define layout, there is a security risk. Malicious scripts can be run upon opening an email message, infecting a PC with malware or otherwise exhibiting unwanted behavior. The HTML script filter will remove all scripts from incoming and/or outgoing email. Every HTML script tag pair (<script> and </script>) is filtered out, removing possible threats. The filter has no further options.

17.3.4.6. IP addresses

The IP filter can be used to blacklist or whitelist mail servers. When certain servers should not be allowed to send email to the corporate network, they can be blacklisted by adding their IP address to the IP filter. Conversely, if only a few specific mail servers should be able to send email, their IP address can be whitelisted. IP addresses can be entered as single addresses or using CIDR notation. The list of IP addresses can be exported as a simple text list and imported in case of a mail server migration or import from another system.

17.3.4.7. Language

If the network clients generally do not communicate using a specific language, it can be assumed that incoming messages in that language are unwanted. Using the language filter, messages that have been written in a specific language can be filtered. For example, an English-speaking company that does not have business partners or customers in Japan could block emails in the Japanese language to cut down on spam.

MailGateway's language recognition system assigns a language recognition rate to every email. Under UNDESIRE LANGUAGES, the languages for which emails should be filtered out can be selected. In addition to the standard measures, MailGateway can add a spam warning to email subject and body. The default subject prefix is [%L %P], adding the language and language match percentage to the subject. Any message can be added to subject or body.

17.3.4.8. Read receipt requests

For many email users, the practice of requesting read receipts provides certainty that the receiving party has actually read an email message. For recipients, on the other hand, read requests can be an annoyance, especially if the email warrants a reply anyway. Moreover, spammers may request read receipts to gauge activity on an email account, increasing spam volume if the email account is actively being used. The filter has no further options.

17.3.4.9. Sender/Recipient

Email messages can be filtered based on sender or recipient. If certain domains are sending unwanted emails that are not taken care of by any of the other filters, the domain can be added as a Sender filter to make sure it is filtered out. The same goes for emails that are addressed to specific recipient addresses or domains. The Recipient filter may not be used often in the fight against unwanted emails, but can be set up to send an alert when emails are delivered to that specific recipient.

The Sender filter can be configured to match emails that have no sender, a practical measure to thwart spammers that manipulate an email header to leave out sender information. The Recipient filter optionally matches messages with an empty recipient field (messages that only contain CC or BCC recipients).

17.3.4.10. Spam

Like the spam filter of the Exchange plugin, MailGateway provides centralized spam filtering capabilities, removing spam from email traffic before it is even delivered to the clients. On the **FILTER** tab, MailGateway's fully automatic spam filter can be enabled or disabled as a whole; by default, it is enabled. Add a name and note to identify the filter in the list view of the **FILTER** module (see chapter 17.3.4). The spam filter scans all email messages and assigns them one of four categories: not spam, suspected spam, high spam probability, and very high spam probability. Emails that are classified as not being spam are delivered immediately. For the other three categories, custom reactions can be defined. On the **FILTER** tab, click **CHANGE** to edit reaction settings for each category. Email messages can be rejected, a spam warning can be added to their subject or body, the message sender can be notified, and the mail can be forwarded to someone. It is safe to configure MailGateway to reject emails that have a high or very high spam probability. Messages can optionally be forwarded to an administrator, who can fine-tune the filter if messages are not categorized correctly. Suspected spam should not be rejected immediately – as with malware scans, there is a risk of false positives. Since only a small number of messages falls in this category, they can be delivered to the recipient. As a warning, a subject prefix or body message should be added to the message.

Value-based ranking

Having configured the measures to be taken when MailGateway detects spam, the parameters that govern that detection can be tweaked. At the core of the automatic spam filter is a value-based ranking system which categorizes a message as spam as soon as it reaches a certain value. Individual criteria add points to a message's spam index value, such as its subject, body or (absence of) message ID. Criteria like mail size or content filter score subtract points. After adding the different values together, the final score determines whether the message is considered spam or not. On the **ADVANCED SETTINGS** tab, the individual scoring components can be adjusted. This should hardly ever be necessary – only if spam is incorrectly marked safe or if messages are accidentally treated as spam. In addition to the ranking system, messages can be marked as spam by one of the various other spam filter parameters.

Blacklist/Whitelist

Using the **BLACKLIST** tab, email addresses or domains can be defined as spam. Any incoming email message from one of the listed addresses or domains is immediately marked as spam. The **WHITELIST** tab does the opposite: whitelisted email addresses and domains can always send email messages; they will never be marked as spam. Combining the blacklist and whitelist allows administrators to fine-tune the spam filter. If a specific type of message, such as a recurring newsletter, is consistently marked as spam, it can be whitelisted. Conversely, if a recurring email message is unwanted, it can be explicitly blacklisted.

Keywords

Instead of categorizing an email by its sender address or domain, MailGateway can scan it for specific keywords. If any of them appear in a message, it is directly marked as spam. Separate keyword lists can be defined for message subject and body. By default, both lists are enabled and pre-populated with terms that are commonly used by spammers. If specific content should always be filtered as spam, keywords can be added to either or both of the lists. By default, the option **MATCH WHOLE WORDS ONLY** is enabled. This makes sure that a message is not categorized as spam if it contains a word which partly matches a keyword. For example: to filter out messages involving cash, the keyword “cash” can be added to the subject and body keyword lists. With the option **MATCH WHOLE WORDS ONLY** disabled, MailGateway would detect all instances of “cash”, even in words like “cashew” or “cashier”. To avoid this kind of unintentional filtering, the option should remain enabled.

Real-time blacklists

Real-time blacklists (RBLs) can be configured on a dedicated tab. RBLs are typically managed by online anti-spam organizations and contain lists of mail servers known to be used by spammers. When MailGateway is configured to use real-time blacklists, it will consult a selection of online lists to see if the sender’s domain has been blacklisted. If it has been blacklisted, points are added to the message’s spam index value. MailGateway can use the RBLs that have been defined by default, but they can be replaced with other URLs if required. If a domain should always be allowed, regardless of whether it is on an RBL, it can be whitelisted.

Bayesian content filter

Having defined all anti-spam parameters, the **CONTENT FILTER** can be enabled to add an additional layer of protection. It is a self-learning filter which relies on the principle of Bayesian spam filtering. When enabled, characteristics of every email that has been designated as spam are stored in a database. Based on these characteristics, future emails are scanned. This helps detect spam messages even if they are slightly different than what has been defined using parameters such as whitelist, blacklist and keywords. The **CONTENT FILTER** tab shows statistics about the amount of email that has been added to the filter database – the more email is scanned, the better the Bayesian filter functions.

18. Advanced configuration

G DATA business solutions have been designed to be ready for deployment out-of-the-box. No advanced configuration is required to get the server and client components up and running. Through the interfaces of G DATA Administrator and G DATA MailSecurity Administrator, all common settings are available.

There are several advanced configuration possibilities available to make G DATA solutions run optimally in an enterprise network. These settings do not usually need to be changed and should only be edited if G DATA Support asks you to do so.

As with any advanced configuration, make sure that configuration files have been backed up before attempting any reconfiguration. If any of the components of the G DATA solution exhibit unexpected behavior after the configuration change, revert to the backup. Do not edit any options other than the ones that apply to the problem that should be fixed. When editing the Windows Registry, changing the wrong values may lead to system instability or other unpredictable behavior. To make sure that any unintended changes can be undone, create a restore point using Windows System Restore or export the relevant registry key(s) before making any changes.

To avoid unwanted behavior while editing configuration files, the background services of applicable G DATA software, such as G DATA ManagementServer or G DATA MailSecurity MailGateway should be shut down, and restarted after saving them (use the Services window to do this: Start, Run, **services.msc**).

18.1. GdmmsConfig.exe

Usually, database access details are automatically configured during the installation of ManagementServer. For advanced database management, however, GdmmsConfig.exe is a very valuable tool. It can be used to carry out backups (see chapter 4.7), maintenance, and configuration.

GdmmsConfig.exe is located in the installation folder of G DATA ManagementServer (by default: C:\Program Files (x86)\G Data\G DATA AntiVirus ManagementServer). When launched, GdmmsConfig.exe shows the current data with which ManagementServer connects to its database.

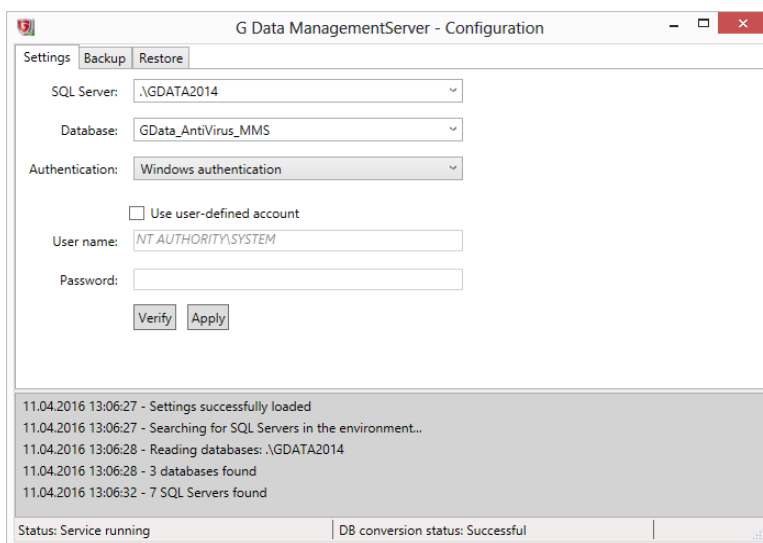


Image 72: GdmmsConfig.exe

Under **SQL SERVER**, **GdmmsConfig.exe** shows the current SQL Server (Express) instance. It can be entered manually or picked from a list. Clicking on the arrow reveals a dropdown list of all detected server instances in the network. The default value, when using a SQL Server Express instance, is **.\GDATA2014**. With the correct server selected, the authentication method can be defined under **AUTHENTICATION**. By default, ManagementServer uses the **WINDOWS AUTHENTICATION** method, logging in with a local system account. Any Windows (domain) account with the appropriate permissions on the database server can be used. Alternatively, select **SQL SERVER AUTHENTICATION** from the list and enter the login details.

Once the database server and authentication have been configured, a list of available databases can be requested from the server by clicking on the **DATABASE** dropdown. When using the default SQL Server Express configuration, ManagementServer stores its data in the database **GData_AntiVirus_MMS**. If another, existing ManagementServer database should be used, select it from the list. To create an empty ManagementServer database, simply enter a name into the text box. To check if ManagementServer can connect to its database, click **VERIFY**. In an upgrade scenario, the database layout may need to be updated to be compatible with the latest version of ManagementServer. It is updated automatically upon clicking **APPLY**.

When installing ManagementServer for an existing database instance (see chapter 4.2.1), the database settings have to be entered during the installation. If any settings need to be adjusted afterwards, **GdmmsConfig.exe** can be used after the installation. Using the tool, the appropriate SQL Server (Express) instance and database can be selected. If ManagementServer was reinstalled on a machine that has an existing SQL Server Express instance with a ManagementServer database, the default settings should be correct. If ManagementServer should use a SQL Server instance on another server, enter the server and login data, click the **DATABASE** dropdown to request a list of databases and then select the database from the list.

GdmmsConfig.exe can be used to perform a database migration. For installations up to one thousand clients, a local SQL Server Express installation performs well (depending on the hardware configuration). If the ManagementServer hits one thousand clients, it may be necessary to move the database to its own server to ensure continuing performance. Using **GdmmsConfig.exe**, this process is relatively easy. Using the current database access details, create a database backup, then enter the new server's details and restore the database to the new server (see chapter 4.7).

18.2. Database requirements

During its installation, G DATA ManagementServer can be configured to use either a local Microsoft SQL Server Express instance or an existing Microsoft SQL Server. In either case, a database will be created and configured automatically (see chapter 4.2.1). When using an existing SQL Server, at least Microsoft SQL Server 2005 is required.

If any problems occur when using an existing SQL Server, it should be verified that the collation settings for the database are still intact. During the installation, the database for ManagementServer is created with **COLLATION** set to **Latin1_General_CI_AS**. Using Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, verify the database's properties to make sure this is still the case. In addition, the ManagementServer database uses the **dbo** database schema. If any changes to the user mapping have been made on the SQL Server, it

should be made sure that the users for the ManagementServer database still have their DEFAULT SCHEMA set to **dbo**.

18.3. Config.xml

Most advanced settings for G DATA ManagementServer can be edited in the configuration file Config.xml, located in the installation folder of G DATA ManagementServer (typically C:\Program Files (x86)\G Data\G DATA AntiVirus ManagementServer). The files can be edited using Notepad or any other text-based editor. When editing Config.xml files, make sure that the text editor does not save the file with the .txt extension. Select ALL FILES (*.*) as file type and make sure the file name is exactly the same as it was before.

The structure of Config.xml will be familiar to administrators that have edited XML-style configuration files before. The file defines various groups of settings, and lists settings within the group with the tag pair <setting />. Each setting has a name, a type and a value, defined as attributes within the <setting> tag. Values are typically integer numbers, Boolean values (True/False), strings, or TimeSpan values. The tables in this chapter list the setting name and the corresponding possible values. The setting name should never be edited – only change the value to the desired setting.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<config>
  <group name="Database">
    <setting name="DbServer" type="string" value=".\\GDATA2014" />
    ...
  </group>
</config>
```

Image 73: Config.xml

The various settings of Config.xml are grouped by theme. The following table lists the various groups and their most important settings:

Group	Setting	Default	Description
<i>Database</i>			
ManagementServer database configuration. These settings should be configured through GdmmsConfig.exe (see chapter 18.1).			
	DbServer	.\\GDATA2014	Database instance.
	Database	GData_AntiVirus_MMS	Database name.
	DbUser	<empty>	Database user name.
	DbPassword	<empty>	Database password.
	UseSQLWindowsAuth	True	Authentication type.
<i>Culture</i>			
Region-specific settings.			
	EmailCodePage	<empty>	Code page for outgoing emails. When no code page is defined here, UTF-8 is used.
<i>P2P</i>			
Settings for peer-to-peer update distribution (see chapter 7.3). The default vicinity settings have been optimized for use in a network with IPv4 as well as IPv6 clients so some parameters have been disabled to prevent clients from			

being wrongly identified as not being in each other's vicinity (DHCP server, default gateway and subnet). When using an IPv4- or IPv6-only network, these parameters can be manually enabled to improve the selection of updated clients that can distribute files. When updating any of the peer-to-peer distribution settings, the changes have to be confirmed by editing a registry key before restarting the ManagementServer service. Using Registry Editor, remove the value DoNotConsiderP2PConfigToDB from the key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\AVK ManagementServer (when using a 64-bit system, the key is located under Software\Wow6432Node\G DATA). This forces ManagementServer to import the configuration values for peer-to-peer update distribution from Config.xml.

P2PMaxNumberOfHops	1	Maximum number of hops between two clients in order to consider them as in each other's vicinity.
P2PConnectRetries	3	Maximum number of connection retries before a client forwards a connection request to another peer.
P2PClientMaxServedPeers	5	Maximum number of clients simultaneously served by one peer.
P2PClientAbandonedConnectionThresholdMin	1	Maximum amount of inactivity time before a connection is considered abandoned (client side).
P2PConsiderClientsOnBattery	False	Exclude clients running on battery power as source for updates.
P2PConsiderClientsLastAccess	True	Consider the client's last access during determining a client as a source of an update.
P2PConsiderClientsSubnet	False	Consider clients from the same subnet to be in each other's vicinity.
P2PConsiderClientsDomain	True	Consider clients from the same domain to be in each other's vicinity.
P2PConsiderClientsDHCP	False	Consider clients obtaining their dynamic IP addresses from the same DHCP server to be in each other's vicinity.
P2PConsiderClientsGateway	False	Consider clients using the same default gateway to be in each other's vicinity.
P2PMmsMaxServedPeers	50	Maximum number of simultaneous client connections served by the ManagementServer (connections through which signature/program update is being downloaded)
P2PMmsAbandonedConnectionThresholdMin	1	Maximum amount of inactivity time before a connection is considered abandoned (ManagementServer side).
P2PDisablePGMUpdateDistribution	False	Enable or disable peer-to-peer distribution of program file updates. (If disabled, only signatures updates will be distributed peer-to-peer).

Programupdate

Settings for staged update distribution (see chapter 7.3.2). Many parts of the calculation can be adjusted to perfectly fit the circumstances in every enterprise network. For several settings, default values for the first six stages have been defined. When using more stages, additional values can be added to the configuration file. If there are more stages than values for a specific setting, the next values will be extrapolated based on the range.

SPUEnable	3	Bitmask for two settings in G DATA Administrator's Updates > Staged distribution window: Distribute automatic software updates by stages (1) and Automatically allocate clients for the first stage (2).
SPUStopAbsolute	5,15,20,30,40,50	The number of corrupted clients per stage at which staged software distribution should be halted (absolute number). Used if smaller than SPUStopPromille.
SPUStopPromille	25,75,100,150,200,250	The number of corrupted clients per stage at which staged software distribution should be halted (per thousand). Used if smaller than SPUStopAbsolute.
SPUStepsTimespan	3.00:00:00 (3 days)	dd.hh:mm:ss. Amount of time until the release of the following stage. Corresponds to the Release next group after setting in G DATA Administrator.
SPUZombieTimespan	14.00:00:00 (14 days)	dd.hh:mm:ss. Clients that have not connected to the ManagementServer for a certain amount of time will not be counted in the mathematical calculation that governs staged software distribution.
SPUFirstStepLimit	5,20	Minimum and maximum number of clients to be included in the first stage.
SPUTotalSteps	3	Number of stages. Corresponds to the NUMBER OF GROUPS setting in G DATA Administrator.
SPUSyncTimespan	00:30:00 (30 minutes)	dd.hh:mm:ss. Synchronization of staged software distribution status between clients, subnet servers and ManagementServer.
SPUMinClients	10	Minimum number of clients in the network required for staged software distribution to kick in.

Folders

File storage locations for various ManagementServer components. When redefining folders, existing files in those folders should be moved into the new folder before restarting the ManagementServer service.

LogFileFolder	<folder>	Log files are stored by default in %ProgramData%\G DATA\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Log.
QuarantineFolder	<folder>	Quarantined files are stored by default in %ProgramData%\G DATA\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Quarantine.
UpdateDistribution Folder	<folder>	Virus signature updates and program file updates are stored by default in %ProgramData%\G DATA\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Updates. This value is synchronized to the IUpdateCfg.xml file on every ManagementServer start.
InternetUpdatePgm Folder	<folder>	The folder where the Internet Update component (IUpdate.exe) is stored, by default C:\Program Files (x86)\G Data\G DATA AntiVirus ManagementServer. This value should not be changed.

BackupFolders	<folder>	Backups are stored by default in %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Backup. Ignored if Server backup paths have been defined in G DATA Administrator (see chapter 12.1).
DBBackupFolder	<empty>	The last used database backup folder in GdmsConfig.exe. The folder setting should only be changed through the interface of GdmsConfig.exe.
PatchFilesFolder	<folder>	PatchManager files are stored by default in %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Patches.
InstallPackagesFolder	<folder>	The folder to which client installation packages (Windows) are saved when using the Gdata.Business.Server.Cli.exe tool.
InstallScriptsFolder	<folder>	The folder to which client installation scripts (Linux/Mac) are saved when using the Gdata.Business.Server.Cli.exe tool.

Server

Settings that determine whether ManagementServer is being run as main, secondary or subnet server. The possible values for MainMms, SubnetMms and IsSecondaryMMS are documented in Config.xml itself.

Patch

PatchManager settings.

UpdateClientPatch ServerLog	0	Bitmask for the type of patch management log entries that are displayed under Server > Infrastructure logs in G DATA Administrator: None (0); Patch applicability jobs (1); Software distribution jobs (2).
AutoPatchJobsBatch SizeDaily	5000	Number of automatic patch jobs that can exist concurrently (during the day)
AutoPatchJobsBatch SizeNightly	10000	Number of automatic patch jobs that can exist concurrently (during the night)

Network

Network settings. When changing the value for ClientHttpPort or ClientHttpsPort, you have to reinitialise the HTTPS security configuration for the port. Open a command prompt with administrative privileges and run *C:\Program Files (x86)\G Data\G DATA AntiVirus ManagementServer\gdmsconfig.exe /installcert*. After changing the ports, restart the G DATA ManagementServer service. Note that, after changing the value for AdminPort, you will always have to specify the port when logging on to G DATA Administrator, in the following format: *servername:port*.

DisableActiveDirectory Search	False	Disable Active Directory synchronization.
AdminPort	0	Port for TCP communication with G DATA Administrator. Enter any port number. Value 0 sets the port to the standard number of 7182.
ClientHttpPort	80	Port for TCP communication with Android clients (distribution of installation files). Enter any port number.

ClientHttpsPort	443	Port for TCP communication with Android clients. ClientHttpsPort should not be altered, as Android clients do not accept an alternative port. Enter any port number.
-----------------	-----	--

General

Various settings.

MaxUpdateThreads	300	The maximum number of clients that can concurrently connect to the ManagementServer.
MaxSubnetUpdateThreads	100	The maximum number of subnet servers that can concurrently connect to the ManagementServer for updates or synchronization.
PerformStartupDBCheckAndRepair	True	Remove redundant database entries when the ManagementServer service is started.
DisplayLicenseLimit	True	Display the number of permitted licenses and the license expiration date in the LICENSE MANAGEMENT module.
MaxParallelClientInstallation	5	The maximum number of clients that can be installed remotely at the same time. Large numbers can lead to network congestion. Minimum 5, maximum 1000.
UseAsyncAwait	True	Enable asynchronous processing for incoming connections. Requires Microsoft .NET Framework 4 with update KB2468871.
SyncReportDays	90	Maximum age (in days) of reports that will be synchronized between ManagementServer and subnet server.
SyncNumberOfRowsPerBatch	200	Number of database rows per batch to be synchronized between ManagementServer and subnet server (influences performance; should not be lower than 100).
SoftwareInventoryEnabled	True	Synchronize client software inventory data from subnet server to main ManagementServer. When using a very large number of subnet servers, this may impact network performance and can be disabled.
QueryPageSize	10000	Performance for large database queries. A large number increases initial waiting time but reduces total waiting time. Lowering the number reduces initial waiting time but increases total waiting time.

18.4. G DATA Exchange Mail Security

Exchange Mail Security not only provides protection when emails are received/sent, but also as they are being created, modified, copied or moved. When using Microsoft Exchange Server 2013 SP1 or newer, Exchange Mail Security connects to mailboxes using Exchange's push notification system in order to

provide the latter type of protection. Several parameters can be configured to tweak the push notification system's performance, as well as its proxy settings.

18.4.1. Push notification performance

Every time the Exchange Mail Security background service is started, it subscribes to every individual Exchange mailbox. Depending on the number of mailboxes on the server, this process can take anywhere from a couple of seconds up to an hour. As long as Exchange Mail Security has not finished the subscription process, protection for emails that are being directly created or modified inside a mailbox or copied or moved between mailboxes is not provided. However, these emails are still scanned as they are sent or received.

The performance of the push notification process can be optimized when working with large numbers of public mailboxes. This makes sure that protection for emails that are being created is available sooner after starting the background service. These settings can be edited using the Registry Editor. The values below are located in the key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\Exchange and can be created if they do not exist yet:

Value	Type	Value data	Description
DefaultConnectionLimit	DWORD (32-bit)	15 (Decimal)	The number of concurrent push notification subscription requests that Exchange Mail Security can initiate. Increasing this number speeds up the subscription process, but may lead to Exchange stability and reliability issues.
DefaultSubscribeDelay	DWORD (32-bit)	65 (Decimal)	The number of milliseconds between push notification subscription requests. Decreasing this number speeds up the subscription process, but may lead to Exchange stability and reliability issues.
PushNotificationLimit	DWORD (32-bit)	10000 (Decimal)	The maximum number of public folders for which the push notification process should be carried out. When the number of public folders exceeds this number, the process is not carried out at all. The value can also be -1 to always enable push notification subscription or 0 to always disable push notification subscription.

18.4.2. Push notification proxy bypass

In networks that use a proxy server, Microsoft Exchange Server push notifications are sent to the proxy server, instead of directly to Exchange Mail Security. Exchange can be configured to bypass the proxy server and send push notifications directly to Exchange Mail Security. This setting can be enabled in the relevant configuration file for Microsoft .NET Framework (web.config) on the affected server.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<configuration>
  ...
  <system.net>
    <defaultProxy>
      <proxy usesystemdefault="true" bypassonlocal="true" />
      <bypasslist>
        <add address="exchangeserver.domain.com" />
      </bypasslist>
    </defaultProxy>
  </system.net>
</configuration>
```

```

    </defaultProxy>
  </system.net>
  ...

```

Image 74: web.config

Web.config is an XML file, with a cascaded structure similar to Config.xml. All settings are contained within the <configuration> </configuration> tag pair. By default, the <system.net> node already exists. Change the <defaultProxy> values to reflect the settings in the image above, replacing the address **exchangeserver.domain.com** with the address of the Exchange server. Requests to that server will now bypass the proxy server.

18.5. Client-based tools

Several tools have been made available to fine tune G DATA software. Like advanced configuration files, software tools need to be used with care. Before making any configuration changes, it is recommended to make a backup of all affected files and folders. Moreover, experimenting on a live network or network client is not recommended. Before deploying any changes through a configuration tool, test its effects on a (virtual) test network or client.

18.5.1. File system monitor activity

The file system monitor is one of the most thorough components of the G DATA security solution. It detects a large amount of malware, but also needs considerable system resources to do so. When client performance is clearly impacted, the Monitor activity tool (MonActivityCS) can help find out if the file system monitor is having problems with a specific file. The tool can be downloaded from <https://secure.gd/ukdls> and can be run directly, without extracting it or running an installation wizard. The tool can be run in two modes: real time or hit list. The real time mode lists files as they are checked by the file system monitor. This is useful if the problem with the file system monitor can be easily reproduced. The hit list will show how often specific files were checked, which helps single out problematic files.

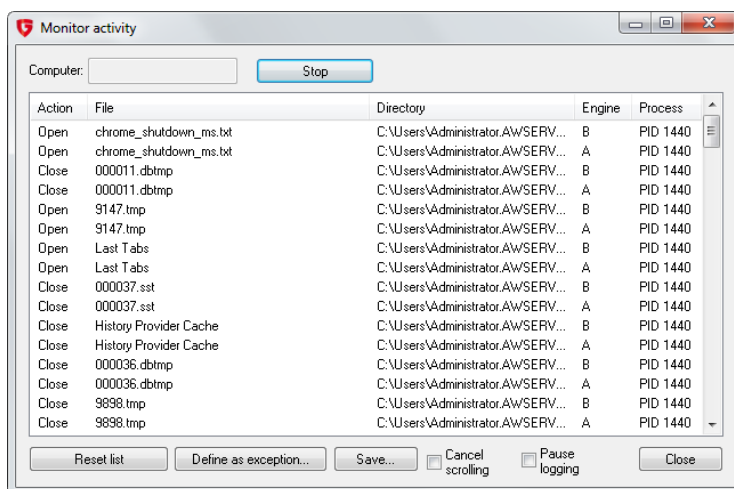


Image 75: Monitor activity

After choosing the mode, the main window of Monitor activity is shown. To start monitoring on the local machine, click **CONNECT** (the **COMPUTER** text field can remain empty); click **STOP** to halt monitoring. The list will be populated as the tool is running. Click **REFRESH** to manually update the list (in **HIT LIST** mode), **RESET LIST** to reset the list (in **REAL TIME** mode) or **SAVE** to save the list of files as a text file. To immediately define a file as an exception for the file system monitor, click **DEFINE AS EXCEPTION**.

18.5.2. Quarantine

When one of the G DATA security layers detects a threat, it is automatically taken care of. If the administrator has defined that files should be quarantined, they are renamed and moved to a secure folder. Using G DATA Administrator's **SECURITY EVENTS** module, the files can then be analyzed, cleaned and moved back. To manage a client's quarantine locally, the Quarantine tool can be used. It can be downloaded from <https://secure.gd/ukdls> (Quarantine generation 2011) and should be run on the affected client. The tool can also be used to check files that are located in the server's quarantine folder, in case analysis through G DATA Administrator is not possible.

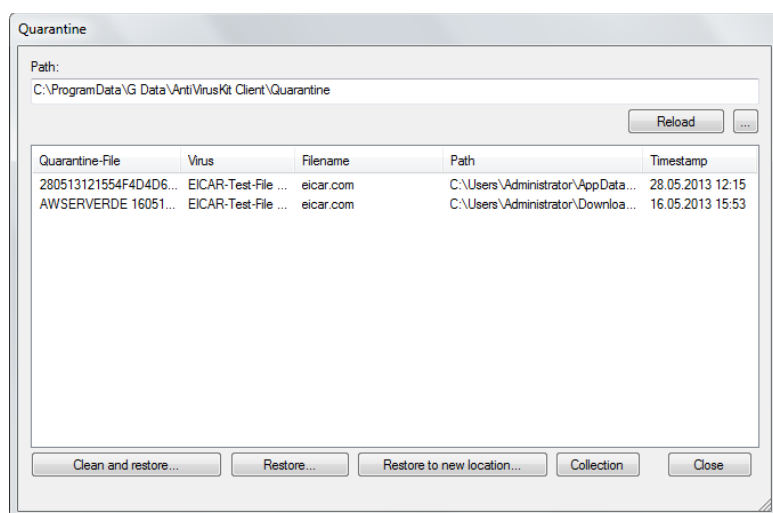


Image 76: Quarantine

Once it has started, the Quarantine tool immediately displays the local quarantine. It takes the default quarantine path and lists all files, along with some metadata. If it does not automatically select the correct folder, it can be picked manually. By default, client quarantine files are saved in %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirusKit Client\Quarantine. When examining the server quarantine, the default folder is %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Quarantine, unless a different path has been specified in Config.xml (see chapter 18.2).

When selecting a quarantined file, several options are available. The recommended option is **CLEAN AND RESTORE**. This will attempt to remove the malware from the file and restore it to its original location. Other options are to restore the file to its original location, without cleaning it, and to restore the file to a new location without cleaning it. Both of these are not recommended: the malware will still be present in the file and poses a risk. If a file cannot be cleaned, it may have to be deleted. To do so, open the Quarantine folder in Windows Explorer and delete the associated .q file.

18.6. Logging

To assist in advanced configuration and troubleshooting, it can be helpful to examine logs. Many of the client-side security modules produce their own logs that can be read in G DATA Administrator, such as virus scans, backup jobs or restore jobs. Additional analysis can be done using several configurable logs. Using those files, the inner workings of most security modules can be analyzed. If any part of the software is acting unexpectedly the log will provide valuable insights. If a client does not receive its updated settings, a subnet server causes problems or the ManagementServer is using extraordinarily large amounts of RAM or CPU cycles, log output may give an indication of the type of problems occurring. Even if direct analysis is not possible, the log files can help our support department investigate the problem.

18.6.1. (Un)installation

The installation wizards of G DATA ManagementServer, G DATA Administrator, G DATA WebAdministrator, G DATA MobileAdministrator, G DATA Security Client, G DATA Exchange Mail Security and G DATA Bootmedium Wizard provide on-screen guidance to help administrators install the software without problems. If, after the installation wizard concludes, some components cause problems or do not run at all, it can be useful to check if the wizard properly installed all components, or if exceptions occurred. Log files for all setup workflows (installation, uninstallation, update) are saved in %ProgramData%\G Data\Setups\Logs. While the setup is running, its progress is logged to a log file with the component name and a timestamp. As soon as setup is completed or aborted, the log file is compressed to a zip file with the same file name structure.

The installation of G DATA Security Client for Linux is logged locally to /var/log/gdata_install.log. When carrying out a remote installation, the log file is also displayed in G DATA Administrator's INSTALLATION OVERVIEW window.

18.6.2. ManagementServer

Log files for ManagementServer are created automatically. The default log folder is %ProgramData%\G Data\AntiVirus ManagementServer\Log. Log files are timestamped and categorized:

- Gdmms.log: All ManagementServer debug output.
- GdmmsError.log: ManagementServer errors.
- Startup\GdmmsStart.log: ManagementServer startup database analysis.

Old log files are kept in the subfolder \Archive, up to a total of 99 files.

18.6.3. Security Client and MailSecurity MailGateway

Security Client and MailSecurity MailGateway can be analysed using the DebugView tool, developed by Sysinternals. In combination with setting a registry key for the module that should be debugged, DebugView generates extensive logs.

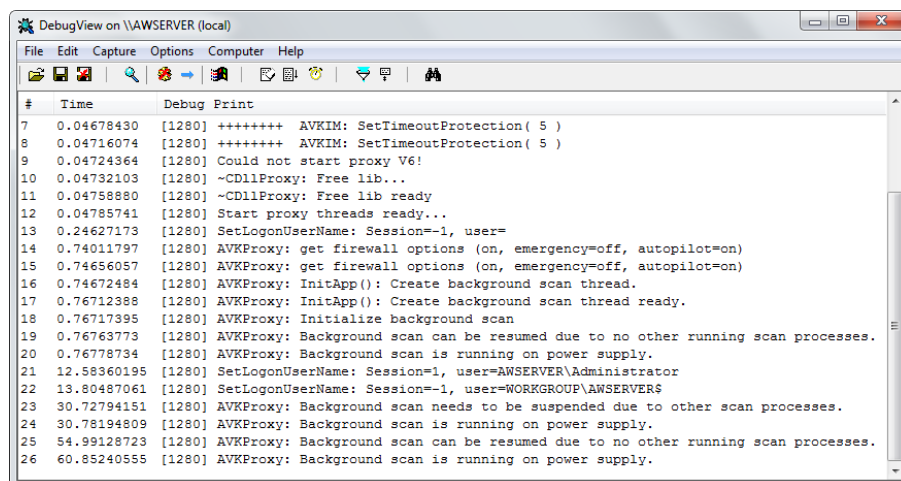


Image 77: DebugView

Using the registry editor, add the following DWORD values with the data **7** to the following keys to allow debugging for the respective modules:

Module	Key ²²	DWORD Value
MailSecurity	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\AVKSmtmp	DebugLevel
MailGateway		
Security Client (general)	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\AVKClient	DebugLevel
Traffic scans	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\AVKProxy	DebugLevel
Updates	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\InternetUpdate	IUpdateDebugLevel
Virus scans	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\G DATA\AVKScanP	DebugLevel

After the registry change, restart the PC. Download DebugView from <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/bb896647>. After downloading the file, extract it and run DebugView.exe with administrator permissions. Under CAPTURE, enable CAPTURE GLOBAL WIN32. While DebugView is running, it will collect debug output from the modules for which the DebugLevel registry key was set. The DebugView window will show all output, which can be saved to a text file. When using DebugView to investigate an error, run it until the error can be reproduced, then save the log. The log can be used for further manual analysis, or be sent to our support representatives.

An exception to the general debug instructions is Device control (one of the PolicyManager modules). Because Device control requires deep level access to Windows' device settings, additional registry settings are required to enable debugging. In the Registry Editor, navigate to the key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\GDDevCtrl, creating the key if it does not exist already. Create a DWORD value called **DebugLevel** with the data **7**. Navigate to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager\Debug Print Filter, creating the key if it does not exist already. Add two new DWORD values: **Default** with data **ffffff** (hexadecimal), and **IHVDRIVER** with data **ffffff** (hexadecimal). Start DebugView as administrator, enable FORCE CARRIAGE RETURNS under OPTIONS, and CAPTURE KERNEL and ENABLE VERBOSE KERNEL OUTPUT under CAPTURE. Restart the client and restart DebugView. This enables debugging for Device control, and will provide relevant logs when the problem is reproduced.

²² On 64-bit systems, the G DATA key is located in HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Wow6432Node\G DATA.

18.6.4. Security Client for Linux

During runtime, G DATA Security Client for Linux logs debug information to various log files. Log files can be found in the folder `/var/log/gdata`. `Avclient.log` contains debug information from the `gdavclntd` daemon (such as signature updates). `Gdavserver.log` is used to log `gdavserver` debug information. `Systeminfo.txt` contains hardware information, which is reported to the ManagementServer.

18.7. Uninstallation

G DATA components can be uninstalled remotely as well as locally. Remote uninstallations allow administrators to manage devices without having to physically access them, reducing management effort. However, sometimes devices may not be reachable via the network. In those cases, a local uninstallation can be an alternative.

18.7.1. Remote uninstallation

G DATA Security Client (Windows, Linux as well as Mac) can be remotely uninstalled by selecting the appropriate client in G DATA Administrator's Clients MODULE and selecting **UNINSTALL G DATA SECURITY CLIENT**. When using one or more subnet servers, the **SERVICES > OVERVIEW** panel offers a remote subnet server uninstallation.

18.7.2. Local uninstallation

G DATA ManagementServer, G DATA Administrator, G DATA WebAdministrator, G DATA MobileAdministrator, G DATA Security Client, G DATA Exchange Mail Security and G DATA Bootmedium Wizard can be easily removed locally using the uninstallation wizard (**CONTROL PANEL > ADD/REMOVE PROGRAMS**). If no shortcut is available through the Control Panel, the uninstallation wizard can be started by launching `Setup.exe` in the appropriate component's folder:

Component	Folder
G DATA ManagementServer	%ProgramData%\G Data\Server
G DATA Administrator	%ProgramData%\G Data\Setups\G DATA ADMINISTRATOR
G DATA WebAdministrator	%ProgramData%\G Data\SLAdmin
G DATA MobileAdministrator	%ProgramData%\G Data\MobileAdmin
G DATA Security Client (Windows)	%ProgramData%\G Data\client
G DATA Exchange Mail Security	%ProgramData%\G Data\Setups\G DATA MAILSECURITYFOR EXCHANGE
G DATA Bootmedium Wizard	%ProgramData%\G Data\Setups\G DATA BOOTMEDIUM

If `Setup.exe` is not available in the respective folder, the original G DATA installation medium can be used instead. Using a command prompt, start the relevant installer with the parameter **/@InstallMode="Uninstall"**, for example **D:\Setup\SecurityClient\Setup.exe /@InstallMode="Uninstall"** to start the uninstallation procedure for G DATA Security Client.

G DATA Security Client for Linux can be uninstalled locally using the script `gdata_uninstall.sh` (usually located at `/usr/sbin/gdata_uninstall.sh`). It will remove all installed packages, program files, temporary files, configuration files and log files (except for `/var/log/gdata_uninstall.log`).

When uninstalling a component locally, related data in the ManagementServer's database are not automatically removed. Make sure to remove any inactive subnet servers using the `SERVERS` module. Inactive clients can be pruned in the `CLIENTS` view.

Acronyms

AD	Active Directory
API	Application programming interface
APK	Application package file (Android)
AV	Antivirus
BCC	Blind carbon copy
BIOS	Basic input/output system
CC	Carbon copy
CPU	Central processing unit
CVE	Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures
DMZ	Demilitarized zone (network)
DNS	Domain name system
ERP	Enterprise resource planning
EULA	End user license agreement
FTP	File transfer protocol
GPS	Global positioning system
HIPS	Host-based intrusion prevention system
HTTP	Hypertext transfer protocol
IIS	Microsoft Internet Information Services
IM	Instant messaging
IMAP	Internet message access protocol
IT	Information technology
JS	JavaScript
MD5	Message-Digest Algorithm 5
MMS	G DATA ManagementServer
MX	Mail exchanger (record)
OU	Organizational unit
PC	Personal computer
POP3	Post office protocol version 3
R&D	Research & development
RAM	Random access memory
RBL	Real-time blacklist
SD	Secure Digital
SIM	Subscriber identity module
SMB	Small and medium-sized businesses
SMS	Short message service
SMTP	Simple mail transfer protocol
SP	Service pack
SQL	Structured query language
SSID	Service set identification
SSL	Secure socket layer
TCP/IP	Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol
UAC	User account control
UDP	User datagram protocol
UNC	Uniform naming convention
URL	Uniform resource locator
UTF-8	Universal Character Set transformation format – 8-bit
VBS	Visual Basic script
WAN	Wide area network
WCF	Windows Communication Foundation
WLAN	Wireless local area network
XML	Extensible markup language

Index

activation	25	Managed Endpoint Security.....	22
Active Directory.....	59	ManagementServer.....	18
administration	26	MasterAdmin	50
alarms.....	55	mitigation	87
application filtering	119	mobile device management	93
apps.....	96	apps.....	96
autorun.....	76	deployment.....	42
backups	102	policies	95
BankGuard	74	protection	94
client role	8	network diagram.....	7
clients	58	network zone.....	7
deployment.....	35	online registration.....	33
installation package.....	38	patch management.....	127
local installation.....	37	performance	65
remote installation.....	36	PolicyManager.....	119
troubleshooting.....	39	port numbers.....	29
Linux clients	39	quarantine.....	88
management	58	local analysis.....	170
mobile clients	See mobile device management	ReportManager.....	56
remove	67	reports	54
troubleshooting.....	39	scan jobs.....	79
configuration.....	26	secondary ManagementServer.....	20
browser	47	security components	12
configuration tools	169	server database	25
desktop application.....	46	backup and restore.....	33
MasterAdmin.....	50	migration.....	162
mobile	49	Server setup wizard.....	30
Dashboard	51	spam filter	
deployment.....	16	Security Client.....	70
device control	121	statistics.....	51
firewall.....	111	subnet server.....	21, 44
rule sets.....	113	synchronization.....	31
groups	58	system requirements	14
idle scan	78	traffic scans	69
internet usage time.....	125	updates	60
licensing	15	clients.....	60
logs		distribution	61
client	171	peer-to-peer.....	63
firewall	116	schedule.....	60
installation.....	171	staged distribution	62
server	171	offline update.....	61
virus scan	See malware infection	rollbacks.....	63
mail groups	31	server.....	32
MailSecurity.....	26, 138	upgrade path.....	27
Gateway	142	vulnerability	See patch management
malware analysis	90	web filter.....	123
malware infection	87		